



*Wm. A. Whittingham*

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE  
Bethesda, Maryland



2500

2 2000 3 2000 2000

2000 2000 2000

2000 2000 2000





W2

290

M345C

1840



THE  
CITIZENS AND COUNTRYMAN'S  
EXPERIENCED

4, FARRIER,

CONTAINING

*A Description of the Symptoms and Causes  
of the various Diseases to which the  
Horse is liable,*

AND

*The most approved Remedies, employed for  
cureing of the same.*

ALSO,

*An experienced and approved method recom-  
mended in the raising of Horses, as to  
their ordering, keeping, &c. also, of  
Mares, Colts, and Stallions.*

TO WHICH IS ADDED.

A list of the several Drugs and Herbs called for in this  
work, with their English and German names, and  
directions where they may be had.

---

BY J. MARKHAM, G. JEFFERIES, AND  
EXPERIENCED INDIANS.

---

CHAMBERSBURG :

PRINTED BY THOMAS J. WRIGHT.

WZ

290

M345C

1840



71-9291

# INTRODUCTION.

FOR

CONFUTING THE WILFUL SELF-CONCEITED.

---

I will not dispute the several opinions of men, respecting the keeping of the running horse, because I know many are idle and frivolous, some uncertain, and a few in the right way; only in this I will clear one paradox, which is strongly maintained, and infinitely pursued by many of our best professors; and that is, the limitation and length of time, for the preparing or making ready of a horse for a match or great wager.

There are divers who affirm a horse, which is exceedingly fat, foul, newly taken from grass or soil, or lofty, liberal, and unbounded feeding, cannot be brought to the performance of his best labour under six months, five is too little, and four an act of impossibility; by which they rob their noble masters of half a year's pleasure, thrust upon them a tiring charge to make the sport loathsome, and get nothing but a cloak for ignorance, and a few false crowns, which melt as they are possessed.—Yet these find reasons to defend a want of knowledge:

As, the danger of so early exercise.

The offence of grease too suddenly broken.

The moving of evil humours too hastily, which leads to mortal sickness.

And the moderation or helping of these by a slow proceeding, and bringing of the horse into order by degrees and times, or, as I may say, by an ignorant sufferance.



These reasons have the show of a good ground; for the early exercise is dangerous, but not if free from violence.

To break grease too suddenly, is an offence insufferable, for it puts both the limbs and the life in hazard, but not if purged away by scowerings.

The hasty stirring up of humours in the body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot but breed sickness.

But not where discretion and judgement evacuate them in wholesome sweats and moderate stirrings.

And for the moderation of all these, by the tediousness of time, as two months for the first, two months for the second, and as many for the last, it is like the curing of a gangrene in an old man, better to die than be dismembered; better lose the prize than bear the charge; for I dare appeal to any noble judgment, (whose purse has experience in these actions) if six months preparation, and the dependencies belonging to it, and his person, do not devour up a hundred pound wager.

But, you will demand of me, what limitation of time I will allow for this purpose of preparation? And I answer, that two months time is sufficient at any time of the year whatsoever; and he that cannot do it in two months, shall never do it in fifteen.

But, reply they, no scowering is to be allowed; for they are physical, then unnatural; they force nature, and so hurt nature; they make sickness, and so impair health; because nature worketh every thing herself, and though she be longer, yet she hath less danger.

I confess that slibbersause scowerings, which are stuffed up with poisonous ingredients, cannot but bring forth infirmity; but wholesome scowerings, composed of beneficial and nourishing simples, neither occasion sickness nor any manner of infirmity, but bring away grease and

all manner of foulness in that kind ; that one week shall effect and cleanse away more than two months of dilatory and doubtful forbearance.

Because no man in this lingering course can certainly tell which way the grease and other foulness will avoid : Whether in his order, which is safest ; into sweat, which is hazardous ; into his limbs, which is mischievous ; or remain and putrify in his body, which is mortally dangerous ; since the issue of all these falleth out according to the strength and state of the horse's body, and the diligence of the keeper : And if either the one fail in power, or the other in care, farewell the horse for that year. All this envy cannot choose, but confess, they have but one broken crutch to support them, which is, they know no scowering, therefore they will allow of no scowering ; against barbarism I will not dispute, only I appeal to art and discretion, whether purgation or sufferance (when nature is offended) be the better doers.

To conclude, two months I allow for preparation ; and according to that time, I have laid directions. My humble suit is out of a sincere opinion to truth and justice, so to allow or disallow, to refrain or imitate.

of a group of persons is often found; that one shall find and the other miss the two hundred and thirty and hundred and thirty.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.

It seems no more to the history of the country.



## TO THE READER.

---

This work, entitled "*The Citizen & Countryman's Experienced Farrier*," is not only in my opinion deserving of the name, but, in the opinion of all that have ever examined it, or experienced the efficacy of the receipts laid down in the work, surpasses any other author ever handed to the public on farriery. Although there may be men, advanced in science, surprized to see a work so vulgar and plain in style go to the press, but in order that the common farmer, who is scarcely able to read, may acquire a competent knowledge of the different branches of the system of the horse, in as short a time, and at as little expense as possible, I have republished the work in its original simplicity of language. I have also carefully added the German names of the common plants and herbs made use of, which in any case is the principal part, so that you may not be at a loss to obtain the ingredients.

Having been encouraged several years ago

by my friends and neighbors, to undertake the republishing of the following work, on account of the scarcity thereof, I have at length undertaken it, and tender my most unfeigned thanks to the numerous subscribers to it for their very liberal patronage. The conditions of the prospectus are fulfilled in every particular on my part; consequently I expect it to escape without censure, and hope that it may answer the purpose for which it is designed.

Respectfully, &c.

C. D. LESHER.

OF THE  
RUNNING HORSE,  
AND VARIOUS OTHER  
CHOICE SECRETS.

---

*The first order of the running horse, according to the several states of their bodies.*

When a horse is to be matched for a running course, you are principally to regard the state of the body in which the horse is in at the time of his matching: and this state of body I divide into three several kinds:

1st. If he be very fat, foul, and newly taken from grass or soil:

2d. If he be extremely lean and poor, either through over-riding, disorder, or other infirmity:

3d. If he be in a very good and well-looking state, having had good usage and moderate exercise.

If your horse be in the first state you should take longer time for matching, keeping, and bringing into order, as two months at the least, or more, as you can conclude your wager.

If your horse be in the second state, that is, very poor, then you should also take as long time as you can; yet you need not so much as in the former, both because grease cannot much offend, and exercise may go in hand with feeding.

If your horse be in the third state (which is a mean between the other extremes) then a



month or six weeks may be time sufficient to diet him for his match.

Now as you regard those general states of body, so you must have an eye to certain particular states of body; as if a horse be fat and foul, yet of a free and spending nature, apt quickly to consume, and lose his flesh; the horse must not have so strict a hand, neither can he endure so violent exercise as he that is of a hard disposition, and will feed and be fat upon all meats and all exercises.

Again, if your horse be in extreme poverty, through disorder or misusage, yet is by nature very hardy, and apt both soon to recover his flesh, and long to hold it, then you shall by no means hold so liberal and tender a hand, nor forbear that exercise which otherwise you would do to the horse which is of a tender nature, a weak stomach and a free spirit; provided always you have regard to his limbs, and the imperfection of his lameness.

Thus you see how to look into the state of horses' bodies, and what time to take for your matching.

I will now descend to their several orderings and dietings; and, because in the fat horse is contained both the lean horse and the horse in reasonable state of body, I will in him shew all the secrets and observations which are to be employed in the dieting and ordering of all three, without any omission or reservation whatsoever.

*How to diet a horse for a match, that is fat, foul, and newly taken from grass, being the first fortnight.*

If you match a horse that is fat and foul, either by running at grass, or standing at soil, or any other means of rest, or too high keeping, you should, for the first fortnight, at least, rise early in the mornig, before day, or at break of day, according to the time of the year, and having put on his bridle, washed him in beer, and tied him to the rack, take away the dung, and other foulness of the stable, then you should dress the horse exceeding well; viz: You shall first curry him all over from the head to the tail, from the top of the shoulder to the knee, and from the top of the buttock to the hinder cambril; then dust him, either with a clean dusting cloth, or with a horse's tail, or such like thing, made fast to a handle; then curry or rub him with the French brush, beginning with his forehead, temples, and cheeks, so down his neck, shoulders and fore legs, even to the setting on of his hoofs, so along his sides, and under his belly; and lastly, all about his buttocks and hinder legs, even to the ground. When you shall go over all those parts which the brush hath touched, with your wet hand, and not leave as near as you can, one loose hair about him, nor one wet hair, for what your hands did wet, you hands must rub dry again; you should also with your wet hands, cleanse his sheath, yards, cods,

and tuel, and not leave any secret place un-cleansed, as ears, nostrils, fore-bowels, and between his hinder thighs: then take an hair-cloth, and rub the horse all over, especially his face, eyes, cheeks, the top of the forehead, the nape of the neck, and down his legs, fetlocks, and about his fasterns. Then take a clean woollen cloth, and rub the horse all over, beginning with his head and face, and so passing over each part of the horse's body: then take a wet mane-comb, and comb his mane and tail; when this is done, take a large body-cloth of thick, warm kersey, if in the winter, or fine cotton if in the summer, and fold it around the horse's body, then put on his saddle, and girt the foremost girt pretty tight, and the other girt slack, and whisp it on each side of the horse's heart, until that both girts be of equal straitness, then put before his breast a warm breast-cloth, and let it cover both his shoulders. When the horse is thus accoutred, you shall take a little beer into your mouth, and spit it into the horse's mouth, then lead him out of the stable, and mount him, leaving some person to trim up your stable, clear away the dung, and shake up the litter, for your horse must stand upon good store of fresh dry litter continually, of wheat-straw, if possible, if not, of oat-straw: as for barley or rye-straw, they are both unwholesome and dangerous, one causeth the heart to burn, the other scowering.



When you are mounted, walk forth your horse a foot-pace, (which is called racking) you must neither amble nor trot, for a mile or two at least, upon good smooth ground, and as near as you can to the steepest hills, then gallop the horse gently up the hills, and rack or walk him down softly, that he may cool as much one way as he warmeth the other; and when you have thus exercised him till sunrise, you must walk him to some fresh river or clean pond that is fed with a sweet spring, and let him drink at his pleasure. After he hath drunk, you must gallop and exercise him moderately, as before, then walk him some distance, and offer him some more water: if he drinks, then gallop him again; if he refuses, then gallop him to occasion thirst, and always give him exercise both before and after water.

When you think he hath drunk sufficient, ride him home gently, without a wet hair.—When come to the stable, before which you must throw all your foul litter, there alight from his back, and by whistling, stretching the horse upon the straw, and raising the straw up under him, see if you can make him piss; which if at first he do not, yet with a little custom he will soon be brought to it: it is a wholesome action both for the horse, and keeping the stable clean.

When these things are performed, you must bring the horse into the stall, and tie his head

up to the rack in his bridle, then with hard wisps rub down his legs very hard, afterwards untie his breast-cloth, rub his head, neck and breast very much, with a dry cloth; then take off his saddle and body-cloth, and rub him all over, especially his back where the saddle stood; and then clothe him with a linen sheet, then over it a strong housing cloth, and above it his woollen body-cloth, which in the winter is not amiss to have lined with some thin cotton, or woollen stuff, but in the heat of summer the kersey itself is sufficient.

When you have girt these cloths about him, stop his sursingle round with large soft and thick wisps, for with them he will lie most at ease, because the small hard wisps are hurtful.

After your horse is thus clothed, then pick his feet, and stop them up with cow-dung, and then throw into his rack a small bundle of hay, well dusted, and bound up hard; this he will tear out as he standeth with his bridle.

After the horse hath stood with his bridle on more than an hour, then rub his head, face, and the nape of his neck, with a clean rubber, of new course hempen cloth, it is excellent for the head, and dissolves all gross and filthy humours; then draw his bridle, and with a clean cloth clear out the manger; and if he hath scattered any hay therein, gather it up and throw into his rack; then take a quart of sweet, dry, and clean-dressed oats, of which the heaviest and the whitest are the

best, such as the Polano oats, or the cut-oats, for those only are wholesome, the others breed infirmity, those which are moist cause swelling in the body, those which are new, breed worms, and those which are half-dressed deceive and injure your horse much : as for the black oats, though they are tolerable in time of necessity, yet they cause foul dung, and thereby hinder a man's knowledge in the state of the horse's body.

This quart of oats put into a sieve, somewhat less than a riddle, and rather larger than a reeing sieve, such as will let light oats go through, and keep a full oat from scattering. Having well cleaned your oats, give them to the horse, and if he eats them with a good stomach, then sift and give him as much more, letting him rest until 11 o'clock : then return to the stable, and having rubbed the horse's head, neck and face, take another quart of oats, cleaned as before, and give them to him, then closing up your windows, that the horse may remain as dark as possible, leave him till one o'clock, for the darker you keep your horse in your absence, the better it is ; it will occasion him to feed, lie down, and take his rest, where otherwise he would not, and you should cover the stall all around, and over head, and over the rack, with strong canvass both for darkness and warmth, and that no filth may come near the horse. At one o'clock return again to the horse, and dress

another quart of oats and give it him: after you have well rubbed his face, head, and the nape of his neck, put away his dung, and make the stable clean, give him a small lock of hay, and leave him until four o'clock, if it be summer, and until three, if it be winter. At four o'clock return to the stable, and having made all things clean, bridle up your horse; having wet the snaffel with beer, and tied him to the rack, then take off his clothes, and dress him in all points, as was shown you in the morning, then clothe and saddle him, and lead him forth, endeavor to make him piss and dung upon the foul litter at the stable door; afterwards mount his back and ride him forth as you did in the morning, but not to the hills, if you can find any plain and level ground, as pasture, meadow, &c. especially if it lies along the river side; but in this case you must take the most convenient ground you can find, there air your horse as you did in the morning, galloping him both before and after his water, then rack him gently up and down; in your racking you must observe, even from the stable door, in all your passages, especially when you would have your horse to empty himself, to let him smell upon every old and new dung he meets, for this will cause him to empty his body and repair his stomach.

When you have watered your horse, and spent the evening in airing him, till near night,



(for nothing is more wholesome, or sooner consumeth foulness, than early and late airings) you should then ride him home, and whatever you did in the morning, either within doors or without, do the same also at night, and so leave him in his bridle for an hour or upwards, then return and rub him well, take off his bridle, clean the manger, put up his scattered hay, sift him a quart of oats, and so let him rest till nine o'clock.

At nine o'clock, which is bed time for your horse, you must rub down his legs with hard wisps, then with a clean cloth rub his face, head, chops, nape of the neck, and fore-parts: then turn up his clothes and rub over his fillets, buttocks and hinder parts; then sift him a quart of oats: afterwards put into his rack a small bundle of hay, toss up his litter, and make his bed, and let him rest till the next morning.

Next morning visit the horse at day-break, and do every thing that hath been formerly mentioned. You should keep your horse thus constantly, for the first fortnight: in which time, by this daily exercise, you will so harden his flesh, and consume his foulness, that the next fortnight you may venture to give him gentle heats.

*Respecting his Heats, you are to observe four considerations.*

1st. That two heats in a week are sufficient

for any horse, of whatever condition or state of body he may be of.

2d. That one heat should be given on that day in the week in which he is to run his match, viz :

If your match is to be run on Monday, then your best heating days are Mondays and Fridays, and Monday to be the sharper heat, because it is the day of his match, and there is three days respite betwixt it and the other heat. If on Tuesday, then the heating days are Tuesdays and Saturdays. If on Wednesdays, then the heating days are Wednesdays and Saturdays, by reason of the Sabbath. If on Thursday, then the heating days are on Thursdays and Mondays, and so on of the rest.

3d. You should give no heat, (except in case of extremity) in rainy or foul weather, but rather change the time and hours, for it is unwholesome and dangerous. Therefore in case of showers and uncertain weather, you should be sure to provide for your horse a warm lined hood, with linen ears, and the nape of the neck lined, to keep out rain, for nothing is more dangerous than cold falling into the ears, upon the nape of the neck and the fillets.

4th. Observe to give your heats, (the weather being seasonable) as early in the morning as you can, that is by break of day; but not in the dark, for it is unwholesome to the horse.

*The Second Fortnight's keeping.*

Now with regard to your second fortnight's keeping, your approach to the stable, cleaning and the like, you shall do all things as in the first fortnight, only before you put on the bridle you should give him a quart of clean sifted oats, when he has eaten them, bridle him up, and dress him well; then clothe and saddle him, air him, water him, and bring him home, as in the first fortnight, only you must not put any hay in his rack, but draw a handful of fine sweet hay, which you must dust well, and let him tear it out of your hand as he standeth with the bridle on, and if he eats it greedily, then you may give him a second and a third handful, and so let him stand an hour or more, then return, and after rubbing him, &c. dress up another quart of oats and lay them by; next take a loaf of bread, that is at least three days old, made in the following manner:

*The first Bread.*

Take three pecks of clean beans, and one peck of fine wheat, mix them together and grind them into a pure meal: then searse and bolt it through a pretty fine range, and knead it up with a good quantity of yeast and lightning, but with as little water as possible; work it well in the trough, tread and break it, and then cover it warm, and let it lay in the

trough to raise; afterwards knead it over again, make it into large loaves, bake them well, and let them soak soundly; after they are drawn from the oven, turn the bottoms upward, and then let them cool.

When three days old you may venture to use this bread, but not sooner, for nothing occasions surfeits, or is more dangerous than new bread; yet if compelled by necessity to use it sooner, or it grows heavy and clammy, so as to displease the horse, you may then cut it into thin slices, lay it into a sieve to dry, and then crumble it amongst his oats, you may then give it to the horse without danger.

When you have taken a loaf of this bread, you must chip it very well, then cut it into thin slices, and break three or four of them very small, and mix it with the oats you had before sifted, and give them to your horse.

About eleven o'clock visit your horse, and after doing the necessary things about the stable, give him the same quantity of bread and oats as you did in the morning, and let him rest till the afternoon.

At one o'clock in the afternoon, (or after, if you do not intend to give him a heat till the next day) you should feed him with bread and oats as you did in the forenoon, and so every meal following for that day, observing every action and motion as heretofore.

But if you intend the next day to give him a heat, you must only give him a quart of



sweet oats, and as soon as they are eaten, put on his bridle and tie up his head, not forgetting the several other things necessary to be done; then dress, clothe, saddle, air and water him, and order him as before, only give him no hay.

After he hath stood an hour with the bridle on, give him a quart of clean sifted oats, and when he hath eaten them, put on his head a clean, sweet muzzle, and let him rest till nine o'clock at night.

The use of the muzzle is to keep the horse from eating his litter, gnawing boards, and to keep him from eating any thing, except what he receiveth from your hand.

These muzzles are sometimes made of leather and pierced full of holes, or else close, but they are unsavory and unwholesome, for if it be allumed leader, the allum is offensive; if it be liquored, the grease is fully as disagreeable: besides they are too close and hot;—both make a horse sick, cause him to loose rest, and retain his dung longer in his body than he would do otherwise.

The best summer muzzle is the net muzzle, make of strong packthread and knit very thick, with small meshes in the bottom, and gradually wider up to the middle of the horse's head, and then bound about the top with strong tape, upon the near side a loop, and on the far side a long string of tape, to be fastened under the horse's head.

The best winter muzzle is that which is made of strong double canvass, with a round bottom, and a square lattice-window of small tape, before both his nostrils, down to the very bottom of the muzzle ; this must also have a loop and string to fasten it about the horse's head.

At nine o'clock at night visit the horse, and when you have performed your by-ceremonies, give him a quart of oats, and as soon as he hath eaten them, put on his muzzle, shake up his litter, and leave him to rest.

Next morning come to him before day, if he be laying, do not disturb him.

Now whilst he is laying, or if he be standing, take a quart of clean oats, and wash them in a little strong beer, do not let them be too moist, for fear of offence, and so give them to him.

As soon as he hath eaten them, bridle him up and hang his muzzle on some clean place ; afterwards unclothe him, and dress him as hath before been shown ; then put on his body-cloth and breast-cloth, and saddle him : when ready, take his bridle and draw it over the rack, so that you may draw his head aloft ; then take a new laid egg, washed clean, and break it in his mouth, and make him swallow it, then wash his tongue and mouth with a little beer, and so lead him out of the stable.

At the door see if he will piss or dung, then mount his back and rack him gently to the

course, making him smell upon other horses' dung, that he may empty himself the better.

When you are come within a mile of the starting post, alight from your horse and take off his body-cloth and breast-cloth, then girt on the saddle again : afterwards send away your groom, both with those cloths, and the clean dry rubbing cloths;—let him stay at the last end of the race till you come. Then rack your horse gently up to the starting post, and beyond ; make your horse smell to that post, as you shall also do at the first post, which we call the weighing post, that he may take notice of the beginning and ending of his course ; there start your horse roundly and sharply at near a three quarters speed, and according to his strength of body, ability of mind, and cheerfulness of spirit, run him the whole length of the course, but by no means do any thing in extremity above his wind and strength ; but when you find him yield a little, give him a little ease, so that all that he doth may be done with pleasure but not with pain ; for this manner of training will make him delight in his labour, and so increase it ; the contrary will breed discomfort, and make exercise irksome.

Also during the time you thus course your horse, you shall with all care, note upon what ground he runneth best ; whether upon the hill, the smooth or rough earth, whether on the wet or dry, and according as you find his

disposition, so maintain for your own advantage.

When you have thus run the course over strongly and swiftly, and after a little slightly galloping him up and down the field to rake his wind and cheer his spirits, then ride to some warm place, (your groom being ready with the cloths, and other necessities) as under the cover of some hedge, bushes or trees, into some hollow dry ditch, pit, or other defence from the air, there alight, and with a grasping knife, or scraping knife, a thin piece of old hard oak, shaped like a long broad knife with a sharp edge; with both hands scrape the sweat off your horse in every part, and continue to do so until he sweat no more, and every now and then walk the horse up and down, and then with dry cloths rub the horse well all over, afterwards take off his saddle, and having scraped and rubbed his back, put on his body-cloth and breast-cloth, then set on the saddle again, afterwards gallop the horse gently forth, and again a little space, often rubbing his head, neck and body as you sit on his back, then walk him about the fields to cool, and when you find that he dries apace, rack him gently homewards, sometimes galloping, but by no means bring him to the stable until he is quite dry. When come to the stable, dismount, and having enticed him to piss and empty himself, then lead him into his stall, and tie his head gently up



to the rack with the bridle, then give him the following scowering, having prepared it before.

*The first Scowering.*

Take a pint of the best sweet sack, and put thereto better than an ounce of the clearest and best rosin, well powdered, brew them together very much; when they are well incorporated together, put to it half a pint of the best sallid oil, and brew them also well together: lastly, take an ounce and a half of brown sugar-candy, bruised to power, and add it also; then mull the whole upon the fire, and being lukewarm, and the horse just come in from his heat, draw his head up to the rack, and with a horn give him this scowering, for it is a strong one, and takes away all manner of molten grease and foulness whatsoever.

*Ordering of the Horse after scowering.*

As soon as you have given the horse this scowering, let your groom rub his legs immediately, and do you take off his saddle and cloths, and finding his body dry, run slightly over it with you curry-comb, and then the brush; then dust well, and lastly, rub all his body exceedingly well with dry cloths, especially his head, nape of the neck, and about his heart; then clothe him up warm, and wisp him round with great warm wisps, and if you throw over him a little loose blanket,

it will not be amiss at such times, especially if the season be cold.

Your horse must fast at least two hours after the receipt of his scowering, but do not depart from the stable, but stay and keep the horse stirring and awake, partly by noise, and partly by making him move up and down. There is nothing more hurtful to the horse, or hinders the operation of the medicine, than sleep and inaction; and nothing better than action, for it makes the spirits lively, and stirs up those humours which should be removed, when rest keeps the spirits dull, and the humours so confined, that nature hath no power to work.

After your horse hath fasted upon his bridle for two hours, then take a handful of wheat-ears without beards, and first handle the roots of his ears, then under his cloths against his heart, upon his fillets, flanks, and thighs; and if any sweat arise, or any coldness of sweat, or if his body beats, or he breathes fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it is a sure sign that there is much foulness stirred up, on which the medicine working with great power, the horse is brought to a little heart-sickness: in this case only take off his bridle, and put on his collar; and toss up his litter that he may lie down;—after having made the stable dark, absent yourself for two hours, which is the utmost end of that sickness.

But if you find no such appearance, offer

him the ears of wheat by three or four at a time; and if he eats them give him more.

After he hath eaten the wheat ears, give him a little bundle of hay and draw his bridle, rubbing his head well.

An hour after this, sift him a quart of the best oats, and to them put two or three handfuls of spelted beans, which cause to be ree'd and dressed very clean. To these oats or beans, break two or three slices of bread, clean chipt, and give all to the horse, and let him rest for near three hours.

At evening before you dress your horse, give him the like quantity of oats, spelted beans, and bread, and when he hath eaten them, bridle him up and dress him; after he is drest, clothe him, for you shall neither saddle him nor ride him forth, as this evening, after his heat, the horse being inwardly foul, and the scowering yet working him, he must not receive any water.

After the horse is dressed, and hath stood an hour and a half upon his bridle, then take three pints of clean sifted oats, and wash them in strong beer, and give them to the horse, for this will inwardly cool and refresh him.

After he hath eaten all his washed meat, and rested a little while, then at his feeding times, feed him with oats and spelt beans, or oats and bread, or all together, or each several and simple of itself, as you find the horse's stomach suited to receive best; feed him that

night in a plentiful manner, and leave a lock of hay in the rack when you go to bed.

Early the next morning feed, dress and clothe your horse, then saddle him, air him, and water him, as before : afterwards bring him home and feed him with oats, spelted beans, and bread ; give him but little hay, and keep your heating days, and the preparation the day before, in such manner as hath been formerly declared, without omission or addition. Thus you will spend the second fortnight, in which your horse having received four heats, soundly given, there is no doubt but his body will be inwardly clean. The third fortnight order him according to the following directions :

*The Third Fortnight's keeping.*

The third fortnight you must make his bread finer than before, viz :

*The second Bread.*

Take two pecks of clean beans, and two pecks of fine wheat, grind them on the black stones, searce through a fine range, and knead it up with yeast, working it well, and baking it in the same manner as you did the former bread.

With this bread, having the crust cut clean off, and being three days old, and clean oats, and clean spelt beans, you should feed your horse this fortnight as in the former : observe



his dressing, airing, and hours of feeding, as in the former fortnight; also observe his heating days and the day before his heat, as before, only with this difference:

You shall not give his heats so violently as before, but with a little more pleasure; that is, if the first heat be of force and violence, the second heat shall be of pleasure and ease, and not at all to overstrain the horse, or make his body sore.

Next you shall not after his heats, when he comes home, give any of the former scowering, but instead thereof you shall instantly upon the end of your heat, after the horse is a little cool, and clothed up, and in the same place where you rubbed him, by drawing his head aloft as you sit in the saddle, or raising it up otherwise give him a ball somewhat bigger than a French walnut, hull and all, of that confection which is mentioned before, of the true manner of making cordial balls.

*The fourth and last fortnight's keeping.*

You shall make the horse's bread much finer the last fortnight than either of the former.

*The last Bread.*

Take three pecks of fine wheat, and one peck of clean beans; grind them to powder on the black stones, and bould them through the finest boulder you can get: then knead it

up with very strong ale-yeast, and new strong ale and the yeast beaten together, and the whites of at least twenty eggs; and instead of water, take a small quantity of new milk. Then work it up very much, and take it as before.

With this bread, (having the crust cut clear away) and oats well sunned, rubbed, beaten, and winnowed; and with the purest spelted beans, feed your horse at his usual feeding times, in in such manner as you did in the fortnight before mentioned.

You shall keep his heating days the first week of this last fortnight, in the same manner as you did the former fortnight, but the last week you shall forbear one heat, and not give him any heat five days before his match, only give him long and strong airings to keep him in wind.

You need not give him any scowering this fortnight.

If for this fortnight you burn, each morning and evening, some pure Olibanum, or Frankincense, mixed with Storax and Benjamin, upon a chafing dish of coals in your stable, to perfume and sweeten it, you will find it exceedingly wholesome for the horse, and he will take delight therein.

In this fortnight, when you give your horse any washed meat, wash it not in ale or beer, but in the whites of eggs, or Muskadine, for that is much more wholesome.

During this fortnight give your horse no hay but what he taketh out of your own hand after his heats, and that must be in little quantities, and well dusted, unless he be an exceeding bad feeder, very tender, and a great belly looser.

The last week of this fortnight, if your horse be a foul feeder, you must use the muzzle continually; but if he be a clean feeder, and will not touch his litter, then use the muzzle three days before your match.

On the morning of the day before your match, feed him well before and after his airing and watering, as at other times before noon:—After noon scant his portion of meat a little.

Before and after airing, feed as at noon, and water as at other times, but be sure to return before sun-set.

This day you must cool the horse, shoe him, and do all extraordinary things of ornament about him, provided there be nothing to give offence, or hinder him in feeding, or other material point; for I have heard some horsemen say, that when they had shod the horse with light shoes, and done other actions of ornament about them, the night before the course their horses had taken such special notice of it, that they refused to eat or lie down: but those horses must have been old, and long experienced in this exercise, or they could not have such apprehensions. As for the nice

and strait platting up of horses' tails, in the manner of sackers or docks, howsoever great the ornament may appear to the eye, yet I do not like it, because if an ignorant hand have the managing thereof, he may give offence to the horse many ways, and by endeavoring to avoid incumbrance he may encumber the more; therefore I advise every one rather to avoid such ornament, than by false notion to injure the horse.

The necessary and indifferent things which are to be done to the horse, should be done the day before, rather than on the morning of the course, because the horse should not be troubled or vexed on that morning.

The next morning, (which is the match day) visit your horse before day; take off his muzzle, rub his head well, and give him a pretty quantity of oats mashed in Muscadine, if he will eat them, or else in the whites of eggs: or if he refuses both, try him with fine dressed oats, dry and mixed with a little wheat, or with your lightest bread; but do not give him beans. Of any of these foods give him such a quantity as may keep him in high spirits; then if he be a horse that is hard of digestion, and will retain food long, you may walk him abroad, and in the places where he used to empty, there entice him to empty; as soon he hath done, bring him home, put on his muzzle, and let him rest until you have warning to make him ready, and lead

him forth : but if he be easy of digestion, you need not stir him, but let him rest quiet.

When you are warned to prepare for leading out, come to your horse, and having washed his snaffle in a little Muskadine, take off his muzzle, and bridle him up ; but if you think the horse is too empty, give him three or four mouthful of the washed food last spoken of, before you bridle him. Then bridle up and dress, having waxed your saddle and girths with shoemakers wax, set it on his back and girth it very gently, so that he hath a feeling, but not strained. Then lay a white sheet over the saddle next his skin, and over it his ordinary clothes, then his body and breast clothes, and wisp them round with soft wisps. If you have a counterpane or cloth of state, let it be fastened above all.

When you are ready to come forth, take a half pint of best Muskadine, give him it with a horn, then lead him away.

In all your leadings upon the course, of slow motions, suffer the horse to smell every dung, that he may thereby empty himself ; and in places of advantage, as where you find rushes, long grass, or heath, walk your horse, and entice him to piss : but if you find none, then walk him in good places on the course, and chiefly towards the end ; and having used the same means before, break some of your wisps under his belly, and make him piss.

In your leading, if any white or thick froth



arise about the horse's mouth, wipe it away with a clean handkerchief. Carry a small bottle of clean water, and wash his mouth now and then.

When arrived at the place of starting, before you uncloth your horse, rub and chafe his legs with hard wisps; then pick his feet, and wash his mouth with water; afterwards uncloth him, mount his rider, and then start fair.

---

### *General Observations and Instructions for buying a Horse.*

There is nothing more difficult in all the art of horsemanship, than to set down constant and invariable rules by which to bind all men's minds to one opinion in the buying of a horse: for, according to the old proverb,—*That which is one man's meat, is another's poison*: what one approves another dislikes. According to the rules of reason, the precepts of the ancients, and the modern practice of our present conceived opinions, I will shew these observations which may strengthen and fortify you in any hard and difficult case.

Observe, that if you wish to choose a horse to your liking, you must consider this principle point: The end and purpose for which you want him, whether for war, running, hunting, travelling, draught, or burden; every one having their several characters and faces.

I will, under the description of the perfect

horse, shew all the imperfections that either nature or mischance can put upon the horse of greatest deformity.

Let me advise those that intend to buy a horse, to acquaint themselves with all the true shapes and qualities belonging to an horse, whether it be his natural and true proportion, or in any accidental or outward increase or decrease of any limb or member; and from their contraries, to gather all things whatsoever that may give dislike or offence.

To begin with the first principle of choice, you shall understand that they are divided into two heads; one general, the other particular.

The general rule of choice is—first, the end for which you buy; then his breed, colour, face, and stature: these are said to be general. The end for which you buy, you keep secret.

You must determine his breed either from faithful report, your own knowledge, or from some known and certain characters, by which one strain or one country is known from another: as the *Neapolitan* is known by his hoop-nose; the *Spaniard* by his small limbs; the *Barbary* by his fine head; the *Dutch* by his rough legs; the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth.

As to the colour, although there is none exempt entirely from goodness, yet there are some better reputed than others;—as the *dapple-gray* for beauty; the *brown-bay* for service; the *black*, *silver-hairs* for courage, and

the *lyard* or true-mixed *roan*, for countenance : as for the sorrel, black without white, and unchangeable iron-grey, they are reputed cholerick ; the bright-bay flea-bitten, and black and white marks, are sanguinists ; the blank-white, yellow-dun, kite-glewed, and pie-bald, are phlegmatic ; the chesnut, mouse-dun, red-bay, and blue-grey, are melancholy.

The pace, you must also refer to the purpose for which you purchase. If for war, hunting, running, or private use, the trot is most tolerable.—This motion you shall know by a cross-moving of the horse's limbs, as when the far fore-leg and near hind-leg, or the near fore-leg and far hind-leg, move forward in one instant. In this motion, the neater the horse taketh his legs from the ground, the evener, opener, and shorter he treadeth, the better his pace : to raise his feet irregular, shews stumbling and lameness ; to tread narrow or cross, shews interfering or falling ; to step uneven, shews toil and weariness ; to tread long, shews over-reaching.

If you choose for ease, or long journeys, then an amble is the best. This motion is contrary to a trot ; both the feet on one side must move equally together ; and this motion must be just, large, smooth, and nimble : to tread false takes away all ease ; to tread short clears no ground ; to tread rough shews rolling ; to tread nimbly, shews a false pace that never continues, and lameness.

If you choose for hunting, galloping on the high-way, post, hackney, or the like, then a racking pace is requisite. This motion is the same as ambling, only a swifter time and shorter tread; and though it cleareth not so much ground, yet it is rather a more easy gait.

To all these parts must be added a gallop, (which every trotting and racking horse naturally hath,) the ambler is unapt thereunto, because the motions are both one, so that being put to greater swiftness of pace than he hath naturally been accustomed to, he uses his legs awkwardly and out of order, but being accustomed gradually, and made to know the motion, he will undertake it as well as any trotting horse whatever. In galloping, you are to observe, that the horse that raiseth his feet nimbly from the ground, but not high, and neither rolleth or beats himself, that stretches out his fore-legs, and follows nimbly with his hind-legs, and neither cuts under the knee, (which we call the swift cut) nor crosseth, nor claps one foot upon another, and ever leadeth with his far fore-foot: he is allowed to gallop most true, and is the best for speed, and so forth.

If he gallops round, and raises his fore-feet, he is then said to gallop strong, but not swift, is best for the great saddle, the wars, and strong encounters. If he gallops slow, yet sure, he will serve for the highway; but if he

uses his feet confusedly, and gallops painfully, then he is fit for no galloping service ; besides it shews some obscure lameness.

His stature must be left to your own judgment, and the end for which you buy him ;—observing always, that the largest and strongest are best calculated for great burthens, heavy draughts, and double carriage ; the middle size for pleasure, and general employments, and the least for ease, street rides, and summer hackney.

The particular rules of choice, are contained in the discovery of natural deformities ; accidents ; outward or inward hidden mischiefs, (which are so many, that it is difficult to explain them.) I will, according to the best conceived opinions, show all that can be observed upon this occasion.—

When a horse is brought unto you to buy, being satisfied of his breed, pace, and colour, then let him stand uncovered before you, and placing yourself before his face, take a strict view of his countenance, and its cheerfulness, for it is an excellent way to see his goodness. viz : If his ears are small, thin, sharp, prickled, and moving, and if they be long, well set on, and carried well, it is a mark of beauty, goodness, and mettle ; but if they are thick, lolling, wide set on, and unmoving, then they are signs of dullness, doggedness, and ill-nature.

If his face be clean, his forehead swelling outward ; the mark or feather in his face set



high, as above his eyes, or at the top of them ; if he has a white star, or a white rach of an indifferent size, and even placed, or a white snip on his nose, all are marks of beauty and goodness : but if his face be flat or cloudy ; his forehead flat as a trencher, (which is called mare-faced,) the mark in his forehead being low, as under his eyes ; if his star or rach crooked or in an evil posture, and instead of a snip his nose be raw and unhairy, and his face generally bald, all are signs of deformity. If his eyes be round, bright, black, shining, or starting from his head ; if the black of the eye fill the pit, or outward circumference, so that in the moving little or none of the white appears : all are signs of goodness, beauty, and mettle : but if his eyes be uneven, and wringled ; if they be little, they are uncomely, and a sign of weakness ; if they be red and fiery, take care of moon-eyes, which is next to blindness ; if white and walled, it shews a weak sight, and unnecessary starting or shy ; if white specks, take care of the pearl, pin and web ; if they water and look bloody, it shews bruises ; if they matter, it shews old over-riding festered rheums, or violent strains ; if they look dead or dull, or hollow and much sunk, take heed of blindness, the beast being of an old decrepid generation at the best ; if the black fill not the pit, and the white is always appearing, or if in moving the white, the black appears in equal

quantities it is a sign of weakness, and dogged disposition.

If in the handling of his cheeks, you find the bones lean, the space wide between them, the wind-pipe big as you can grip, and the void place without knots or kernels, and the jaws generally so open, that the neck seemeth to couch within them, are all excellent signs of great wind, courage, and soundness of head and body : if the chops be fat and thick, the space between them closed up with gross substance, and the wind-pipe small, all are signs of short-wind, and much inward foulness : if the void place be full of knots and kernels, take heed of the strangles or glanders, at least the horse is not without a bad cold.

If his jaws be so strait that his neck swells about them, if no more than natural, it is an uncomely sign of strait wind and grossness ; but if the swelling be long and close to his chops, then beware of the vives, or other imposthume.

If his nostrils be open, dry, wide, and large, so as upon any straining, the very inward redness is discovered, and if his muzzle be small, his mouth deep, and his lips equally meeting, they are all good signs of wind, heat, and courage ; but if his nostrils be strait, his wind is little ; if his muzzle be gross, his spirits are dull ; if his mouth be shallow, he will never carry a bit well ; if his upper lip will not reach the under, old age and infirmity

have marked him ; if his nose be moist, and dropping clear water, it is a cold ; if foul matter, then beware of the glanders : if both nostrils run, it is hurtful ; if only one, then it is dangerous.

His teeth are mentioned in another chapter, only remember never to buy a horse that wants any, for it is as bad to lose all as one.

From his head look down to his breast, and see that it be broad, out-setting, and adorned with many feathers, for that shews strength and endurance : the little breast is uncomely, and shews weakness : the narrow breast is apt to stumble, fall, and interfere : and the breast that is hidden inward, and wanteth the beauty and division of many feathers, shews a weak-armed heart, and unfit for toil or labour.

Next look down from his elbow to his knee, and see that the fore-thighs be rush-grown, well-horned within, sinewy flesh, and without swelling, for they are signs of strength ; the contrary shews weakness, &c.

Then look on his knees, that they carry an equal and even proportion ; are clean, sinewy, and closely knit, for it is good and comely ; if one be bigger and rounder than the other, the horse received injury : if they be gross, the horse is gouty : if they have scars, or hair broken, it is a sure mark of a stumbler.

From his knees, look down his legs to his pasterns, and if you find them clean, fat, and sinewy, and the inward bought of his knee

without a seam or hair-broken, then he shews good shape and soundness; but if on the inside there are excretions, if under his knee there be scabs on the inside, it is the swift cut, and he will endure galloping: if above his pasterns you find scabs on the inside, it shews interfering: if the scabs be generally over his legs, it is extreme foul keeping, or a spice of the mange: if his legs be fat, round, and fleshy, he will never endure labor: if in the inward bought of his knee you find seams, scabs, or hair-broken, it is a malander, or canker-worm.

Look then on his pasterns, the first must be clean and well knit together, the other must be short, strong, and upright standing: if the first be big or swelled, take care of the sinew-strains and guardings; if the other be long, weak, or bending, the limbs will hardly carry the body without tiring.

The hoofs in general should be black, smooth, tough, rather long than round, hollow, and full sounding; a white hoof is tender, and carries a shoe ill; a rough, gross-seamed hoof shews old age or over-heating; brittle hoofs will carry no shoe; an extraordinary round hoof is bad for foul ways or deep hunting; a flat hoof that is pummiced, shews foundering; and a hoof that is empty and hollow-sounding, shews a decayed inward part, by reason of some wound or dry-foundering. As for the crownnet of the hoof, if the

hair be smooth and close, and the flesh fat and even, all is perfect; but if the hair be staring, the skin scabbed, the flesh raising, beware of ring-bone, crown-scab, &c.

After this, stand by his side, and look to the setting of his head, see that it stands neither too high nor too low, but in a direct line, and that his neck be small and long at the setting on, growing deeper till it comes to the shoulders, with a high, strong, and thin crest; his mane thin, long, soft, and somewhat curling—these are beautiful characters, whereas to have the head ill set on, is the greatest deformity; to have any lump or swelling in the nape of the neck, shews the pole-evil, or beginning of a festula: to have a short thick neck like a bull, to have it falling at the withers, to have a low, weak, thick, or falling crest, shews want of strength and mettle; to have much hair on the mane, shews intolerable dullness, too thin shews fury, and to have none shews the worm in the mane, &c.

Then look to the chine of the back, that it is broad, even, and straight, his ribs well compassed and bending outward, his fillets upright, strong and short, and not above four fingers between his last rib and his knuckle-bone. Let his body be well let down, yet hidden without his ribs, and let his stones be thrust close up to his body; all these are good signs. To have his chine narrow, he will never carry a saddle without wounding; and to have it



bending, or saddle-backed, shews weakness; to have his ribs fat, leaves no liberty for wind: to have his fillets hanging long or weak, he will never climb a hill well, nor carry burthen: to have his belly clung up and gaunt, or his stones hanging down close or aside, are both signs of sickness, tenderness, or foundering in the body, and unfit for labour. Then see that his buttock be round, full, plump, and on a level with his body; or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread out at the setting on of the tail, for these are beautiful marks: the narrow pin-buttock, the hog-rump, and the falling buttock is full of deformity, and shews an injury by nature, and not fit for pad, foot-cloth, or pillion.

See that his hinder thighs, or gascions, be well let down, even to the middle joint, thick, brawny, full and swelling, for that is a great sign of strength and goodness; the lean, lank, slender thighs, shews inability and weakness. Look at the middle joint behind, if it be skin and bone, veins and sinews, and rather too strait, then it is perfect; but if it hath chaps or sores in the inward bought or bending, then it is a selander.

If the joint be swelled generally all over, then he hath got a blow or bruise; if the swelling be particular, as in the plot or hollow part, or on the inside, and the vein full and proud; if the swelling be short, it is a blood-spaven; if hard, it is a bone-spaven; but if

the swelling be behind, just below the knuckle, it is a curb.

If his hind legs are clean, fat, and sinewy, then all is well; but if they be fat, they will not endure labour; if swelled, the grease is molton into them; if scabbed above the pasterns, he hath the scratches; if he has chaps under his pasterns, he hath the pains. All are dangerous.

As for his tail, where there is a good buttock, the tail can never set ill, and where there is an ill buttock, the tail can never set well, it ought to be broad, high, flat, and inclining inward.

---

*Cures for the Infirmities most dangerous and common to Horses, especially the Running Horse.*

OF SICKNESS IN GENERAL.

When you find your horse to droop in countenance, forsake his food, and shew any sign of sickness, if it be not great, you need not let blood, but if the signs are great, then let blood instantly, and for the three following mornings, the horse being fasting, give him half an ounce of the powder called Diahexaple, brewed in a pint of pure syrup, or sugar, two degrees above ordinary molasses, or for want thereof, molasses will answer, if neither can be had, take a pint of cardus-water, or else dragon

water, or a quart of sweet strong ale-worth. Give him this in a horn, and if the horse is able, ride him out to some warm place after it, and let him fast near two hours more. At noon give him a sweet marsh, clothe him warm, and do not suffer him to drink cold water.

The true preparation of this powder is as follows, the public being often imposed upon by a false preparation :

*Take grains of Paridice, ivory, myrrh. roots of Enula Compana, tumerick, and gentian, an equal quantity ; beat and searse them into fine powder. and give the horse the quantity before directed. This resisteth the putrefaction of humours. comforts and strengthens the inward parts. opens obstructions, helps the lungs, and if taken in time, recovers the horse, and prevents many other diseases.*

---

### *Observations and Directions in various Accidents.*

The first observation necessary, is to discern sickness from health, viz : If you find in your horse heaviness, extreme looseness, or costiveness, shortness of breath, dislike of food, dull imperfect eyes, dry cough, staring or unnatural hair, staggering pace, frantic behaviour, yellowness of the eyes and skin, cold sweat, much lying down, beating or looking back at

his body, alteration in looks, no casting his coat, leanness, hide-bound, &c., all are appearances of distemper or sickness.

*Observations from the Dung.*

If the dung be clear, crisp, of a pale-yellow, firm, not so thin as to run, nor yet very hard, and in substance resembling a sound man's ordure; then the horse is clean, fed well, and without imperfection. If it be well-coloured, yet fall from him in round balls, or pellets, and is all alike, it is a sign of foul feeding, he hath eat too much hay, or litter, and too little corn.

If his dung be in black or brown balls, it shews inward heat; if it be grease, it shews foulness, and that grease is moulten and cannot be discharged: if he discharges grease in gross substance with his dung, and the grease is clear and white, then it discharges freely, and there is no danger; but if it be yellow and putrified, the grease hath lain long in his body, and sickness will follow, if not prevented. If his dung be red and hard, the horse had too strong heats, and costiveness will follow; if it be pale and loose, it shews inward coldness of body, or too much moist feeding.

*Observations from the Urine.*

The urine which is of a pale yellow, rather thick, a strong smell, and sharp, is good sound urine: if on the contrary, the horse is out of

order. If the urine be of an high red colour, like blood, then the horse had too great heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after winter-grass; if the urine be of an high clear colour, like old beer, then the horse is inflamed in his body, and hath taken some surfeit.

If the urine carry a white cream on the top, it shews a weak back, and consumption of seed.

A green urine shews consumption of the body. Urine with bloody streaks, shews an ulcer in the kidneys; and a black, thick urine shews death and mortality.

### *Observations in feeding.*

You must observe, that if there be any meat, drink, or other nourishment which you know is good for the horse, and he rejects the same, do not force him to take it, but by gentle means, and process of time, win him thereto; tempting him when hungry or thirsty, and if he takes but a little at a time, it will soon increase to a greater quantity, and always give him less than he would eat. That he may be brought to it the sooner, mix the food that he likes the best with that he most dislikes, until both become alike familiar to him.

### *Observations in case of Lameness.*

Again you must observe, if the horse be subject to lameness, or stiffness of joints or sinews, or tenderness of feet, to give him his



heats upon soft and smooth earth, and to avoid stony ground, hard high-ways, &c., except compelled to ride thereon.

*Observations from the state of the body.*

The strongest state of body, (which is the highest and fullest of good hard flesh, without inward foulness,) is the best for the performance of wagers. You must observe the shape of the horse's body, and his manner of feeding.

There are some horses round, plump, and close knit together, so that they appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and poor: others are raw-boned, slender, and loose-knit together, and appear lean, deformed, and in poverty, when they are fat and full of humours.

Some horses will feed outwardly, and carry a thick rib, when they are inwardly as clean as may be, and without any manner of foulness.

Others that appear clean to the eye, and shew nothing but skin and bone, when they are full of inward fatness, and have guts as full as can be. In this case you have two ways to aid your opinion, one outward, the other inward.

The outward is by feeling the horse's body and ribs, particularly upon his short and hindmost ribs: if his flesh feels soft and loose, and your fingers sink into it, then the horse is foul: but if it be generally hard and firm upon the hindmost rib only, and soft elsewhere, then it

is a sure sign that there is grease and foul matter within the horse which must be discharged, notwithstanding his outward lean appearance.

The inward aid is only sharp exercise and strong scowerings; the first will dissolve all foulness, the latter will bring it away in abundance.

If your horse be fat and thick, and as it were closed up between the chaps, or his jaws feel fleshy and full, it is a sign of much foulness both in head and body; but if he feels thin, clean, and only some lumps or small kernels within his chaps, then it is only a sign of a new cold.

#### *Observations from the private parts.*

You must observe the horse's stones, if a stallion. If the stone hang down side or long from his body, then the horse is out of lust and heart, and is sick of grease or other foul humours; but if they be close drawn up, and lie hid in a very small compass, then the horse is in health and good condition.

#### *Observations from the Limbs.*

You must observe, every night, before he runs either match or heat, to grease the horse's legs well, from above the knee and the cambrels downward, with dog's grease, (which is the best) trotters oil, or pure hog's grease—work it well in with the hand, and

rubbing it every day before the day of starting. You need anoint it only once, but rub it often.

*Observations for watering.*

Observe that I give no directions for the watering of the horse in the evening after his heat, yet you may, in any of the three last fortnights (the horse being clean, and his grease consumed,) about six o'clock give him water in reasonable quantity, made milk-warm, and let him fast for an hour afterwards.

If the weather be unseasonable at your watering hours, you may give him milk-warm water, in which throw a handful of wheat-meal or bran, finely powdered.—Oat meal is better.

*Observations in the choice of ground.*

Take notice, if the ground whereon he is to run his match be dangerous, and apt to strain, slip, over-reach, and so forth, not to give him all his heats thereon: but having made your horse acquainted with the nature thereof, either take part of the course, as a mile or two, according to the goodness of ground, and run your horse forward and back again, (which are called turning heats) provided always that he ends his heats at the weighing post, and that he makes not this course less, but rather more in quantity than he hath to run: but if you like not part of the course,

you may sometimes, but not always, give your heats upon any other good ground, either strait forward, and back, or round about any spacious field, where the horse can run at pleasure.

### *Observations from sweating.*

Take notice in all his airings, heatings, and all manner of exercise and motion whatsoever, of the sweating of his body, and the occasion thereof. If your horse sweats upon little or no occasion, as walking, foot-pace, standing still in the stable, or the like, it is then apparent that the horse is faint, foul fed, and wanteth exercise; but if upon good occasions. as strong heats and the like, he sweats, and it is white and frothy like soap-suds, then the horse is inwardly foul, and wanteth exercise; but if the sweat be like water thrown upon him, then the horse is in health and good condition.

### *Observations from the Hair.*

Observe your horse's hair in general, but especially his neck, and those parts which are uncovered; if they be slack, smooth, and close, the horse is in good case; but if they be rough and staring, or any way discoloured, the horse is cold at heart, and wanteth cloaths and warm keeping, or there is some sickness coming upon him.

## MATTHEW HODSON'S MEDICINES.

---

### *A Medicine for the Glanders.*

Take a quart of red vinegar, not wine vinegar; put it over the fire, and add to it two spoonsful of English honey, two spoonsful of Elecampane, beaten into fine powder, and searsed through a fine searse: as much rock allum as the size of an egg, beaten in fine powder: after all these have boiled together for a quarter of an hour, take it off the fire and put to it half a pint of sallad-oil; then let it stand until it be milk-warm, and give your horse six spoonsful in each nostril, with a little horn:—ride him two or three turns, then tie his head down to his foot for four hours, and let him fast that time. Give this drink at nine different times, being three days between every drink; every second time that you give him this drink, give him chickens-guts warm, rolled in beaten bay-salt, and put them down his throat: feed him with warm water, and wet hay all the time he taketh the drink. This will mend the glanders, and the mourning in the chine. *Proved.*

### *For any cold that is not the Glanders.*

Take two spoonsful of ground pepper; two of mustard; four of sallad-oil; four onions,



roasted very soft and cut small ; two spoonsful of elecampane powdered : mingle all these together, and make them into balls with fresh butter, give your horse three balls at a time. These balls, given him three times, will cure, if you travel him.

*For a strain in the shoulder.*

Take two ounces of oil of pompilion, two of spike, and two of linseed ; rub them well upon his shoulder, and warm them in with an hot iron ; then let him be bled in the shoulder, and hople his fore-feet together.

*A cure for a sinew-sprung Horse.*

Take a pint of linseed-oil, boil it, and put in a small quantity of aqua vitæ, stir them together and anoint your horse's legs therewith.

*The true manner of making Balls. which cure any violent cold or glanders ; prevents sickness ; purges away molten grease ; recovers a loose stomach ; keeps the heart from fainting with exercise, &c.*

Take anniseed, cummin-seeds, fenu-greek seed, fine powder of elecampane roots, of each two ounces, beaten and searsed very fine ; add to them two ounces of brown sugar-candy in powder, and two ounces of flour of brimstone : then take an ounce of best liquorice-ball, and dissolve it on the fire in a half pint

of white wine : when done, take an ounce of the best oil of anniseed, and three of the sirup of colts-foot : then take sallad-oil, fine live honey, and purest sirup of sugar, or molasses, of each half a pint. Mix all these with the powders, and as much fine wheat flour as will bind them together ; work them into stiff paste, and make balls somewhat bigger than a French walnut, keep them in a cloth galley-pot, they will last a year. You must keep it packed together in the pot and make it into balls as occasion requires.

The manner of using this composition is thus : If to prevent sickness, make one ball and rub it over with sweet butter, and give it to the horse in the morning, as you would a pill ; ride him a little afterwards if you choose, and feed and water him abroad or at home, as usual. This you must do for three or four mornings.

If to cure cold or glanders, then use them in the same manner for a week together.

If to fatten a horse, give them for a fortnight.

If for scowering, or to take away all foulness, use them immediately after his heats.

If you find your horse hath taken cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling, then take one of these balls, dissolve in half a pint of sack, and give it him with a horn.—To dissolve the ball in milk-warm water, has the same effect, and fattens a horse very much.

One of the balls, given before a journey, prevents tiring: if given in the height of travel, it refresheth him, and to give it after travel, saves a horse from surfeits and inward sickness.

*An approved cure for the botts, and all kind of worms whatever.*

Take a quart of new milk, and as much clarified honey as will make it very sweet: give it luke-warm to the horse very early in the morning, he having fasted all the night before; then bridle him up to the empty rack two hours.

Afterwards take a pint of white wine, and dissolve a large spoonful of black soap in it, being well incorporated (the horse having stood two hours) give it him to drink, and let him fast two hours after it, and the worms will void in great abundance.

*Another recipe for the botts, or worms, the most easy and certain without sickness.*

Take the soft downy hairs which grow in the ears of an horse, which you clip away when you poll him, and the little short tuft which grows on the top of his forehead, underneath his foretop, a good quantity of each; mix them well with half a gallon of sweet oats, and give them to the horse. There is nothing that will kill worms more certainly.

*How to know the age of a horse to a certainty.*

There are seven outward characters by which to know the age of a horse: viz. His teeth, hoofs, tail, eyes, skin, hair, and the bars of his mouth.

*First.* To know his age by his teeth, you must observe that a horse has just got forty teeth:—that is, six great wang teeth above, and six below on one side, the same on the other, which makes twenty-four, and are called his grinders. Then six above and six below in the fore-part of his mouth, called gatherers, which make the number of thirty-six. Four tushes, one above and one below on each side, just makes forty teeth.

The first year he hath his foal's teeth, which are only grinders and gatherers. They are small, white, and bright to look at.

The second year he changeth the four foremost teeth in his head, they will appear browner and bigger than the others.

At three years old he changeth the teeth next to them, and leaveth no apparent foal's teeth before, but two at each side above, and two below, which are bright and small also.

At four year he changeth the teeth next to them, and leaveth no more foal's teeth, but one on each side above and below.

At five years his foremost teeth will change, and then he hath his tushes on each side complete, and the last foal's teeth will be cast:

those which come in their place will be hollow, and have a little black spot in the middle, which is called the mark in the horse's mouth, and continue till he be eight years old.

At six years old he putteth up his new tushes, near which you shall see a little circle of new flesh growing at the bottom of the tush; besides the tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

At seven years all his teeth will have their perfect growth, and the mark on the horse's mouth will be plainly seen.

At eight years all his teeth will be full, smooth, and plain, the black spot can hardly be seen, and his tushes will become more yellow.

At nine years his foremost teeth will shew longer, yellower, and fouler than before, and his tushes will be bluntish.

At ten years, in the inside of his upper tushes there will be no holes at all to be felt, and which till that age can be plainly felt: and his temples will begin to be crooked and hollow.

At eleven years his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, and foul; he will cut even, and his teeth will stand just opposite each other.

At twelve years, his teeth will be long, black and foul, and his upper teeth will reach over his under teeth.

At thirteen his tushes will be worn some-



what close to his chaps if much ridden, if not, they will be black, foul and long, like a bear's.

*Second.* If a horse's hoofs be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seam over another, and many : if they be dry, foul, and rusty, it is a sign of very old age : a smooth, moist, hollow, well sounding hoof, is a sign of being young.

*Third.* Take the horse by the stem of the tail, with your finger and thumb, close to his buttock, and feel there hard, if you find on each side a joint stick out more than the rest, of the size of a hazlenut, then you may presume the horse is under ten years old : but if his joints be all plain, then he is about ten.

*Fourth.* If a horse's ears are round, full, and starting from his head ; the pits over his eyes be filled smooth and even with his temples, and no wrinkles either about his brow or under his eyes, then he is young. If the contrary, it is a sign of old age.

*Fifth.* If you draw up a horse's skin betwixt your finger and thumb, then letting it go again, if it suddenly returns, and is smooth without wrinkles, then he is young and full of strength ; but if it do not return, he is very old and wasted.

*Sixth.* If a dark coloured horse grows grissel only above the eye-brows, or under the mane ; or a whitesh horse grow meanelled with either black or red meanels over his body, then both are certain signs of great age.

*Seventh.* If the bars in his mouth be large,

deep, and handle rough and hard, then the horse is very old ; but if they be soft, shallow, and handle tenderly, then he is young.

*A sure purge for a horse that is sick of grease.*

Take a pint of good old white wine, set it on the fire, and dissolve into it a lump of Castile soap, half as big as a hen's egg : strain them well together on the fire ; take it off, and put into it two spoonsful of fine powdered hemp-seed, and an ounce and a half of best sugar-candy, in powder, and brew all well together. Then having warmed the horse, to stir up the grease, and other foul matter, give him this to drink, and walk him up and down after it to make the drink work ; then put him up and down a little in the stall, if he grows sick, give him liberty to lie down. After fasting two hours, give him a sweet mash, then feed as usual.

*For laxativeness or extreme looseness.*

Take a quart of red wine and set it on the fire ; then put into it an ounce and a half of bole-armoniac, in fine powder, and two ounces and a half of the conserves of sloes ; stir thm well together ; then take it from the fire, and add two spoonsful of the powder of cinnamon : brew all well together, and give it to the horse. Let him fast two hours after it, and eat no washed meat. Hay is good ; so is bread and oats, if well mixed with beans or wheat, but not else.

*An infallible help for the stone, or pain of urine, causing sickness.*

Take a strong decoction, viz: Boil your first quantity of water to half a pint, three times over, with keen onions clean peeled, and parsely; take a quart thereof, and put in it a great spoonful of molasses, and as much of the powder of egg-shells, finely searced, give it to the horse to drink. Do so for many mornings, if the infirmity be great, otherwise when you see the horse in pain.

*An approved Medicine to cure and break any old cold, and dry up a running glanders.*

Take a pint of the best verjuice, and put to it as much strong mustard, made with wine vinegar, as will make the verjuice strong thereof: then take an ounce of roch-allum, powdered fine, and when you give the verjuice to the horse, put some of the allum into the horn, and give it part at his mouth, and part at both his nostrils, especially the one that runneth most; then ride and chafe him a little after it, and put him up warm: at noon give him a warm mash, and never give him cold water, except when he can have exercise after. Thus drench the horse three days together, and it is sufficient.

*For a violent Cold.*

Take half a pint of wine-vinegar, as much sallad-oil, brew them well together, and put

to it an ounce and a half of sugar-candy in powder, and give it to him, stirring him a little after. It is very good, but will occasion a short sickness.

*An excellent scowering, when others fail.*

Take a quarter of a pound of sweet butter, half as much castile-soap, beat them well together, then add to them two spoonsful of hemp-seed bruised, a spoonful of anniseed bruised, an ounce of sugar-candy; half a spoonful of fine bruised rosin. Work all these into a paste, and give it to the horse in the manner of pills, immediately after his heat, or when you have warmed him, and stirred up his foulness.

*An admirable water for sore eyes, or to clear dim sight, as moon eyes, &c.*

Take the stone, called Lapis Calaminaris, heat it red hot, then quench it in half a pint of white-wine, and thus do twelve times.—Then add to it a gill of the juice of house-leek, and with this bathe the eye twice or thrice a day.

*Another water equal to the above.*

Take a pint of snow-water, and dissolve in it three or four drams of white vitrol; with this water wash the horse's eye three or four times, and the effect will be great.

*An excellent medicine for a back sinew-strain, straitness, shrinking, or numbness of joints.*

Take a fat mastiff whelp, slay it and gut it, then fill the body with grey and black snails, and roast it: when it begins to warm, baste it with six ounces of oil of spike, coloured with saffron, and six ounces of the oil of wax. Save the dripping and moisture that falls, in a gally-pot.

With this ointment anoint the strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot bar of iron before it: do so morning and evening, till cured.

*St. Anthony's excellent medicine for a strain, &c.*

Take cummin-seeds, bruise them well, and boil them with the oil of camomile; add to it as much yellow wax as will bring it to the body of a plaster, spread it on cloth or leather, and apply it very warm to the place. It is excellent also for mankind.

*Another for any desperate old strain, either in the shoulders, joints, hips, or back-sinews.*

Take a pint of the best aqua vitæ; of oil bays, oil of swallows, and black soap, each half a pint: work all these together till they come to thin ointment; then take camomile, red sage, rue, and messeldine, of each an handful; dry them and rub them to fine powder, mix them with the ointment, and bring



all to a gentle salve. With some of this salve as hot as the horse can bear, anoint the strain, and hold a hot bar of iron before it, chafing it with your hand as much as may be; thus do once a day, and in nine days the cure will be effected.

*An excellent remedy for any strain on the sinews, or sore proceeding from heat.*

Take the whites of six eggs, and beat them well with a pint of white-vinegar, and an ounce of the oil of roses, and as much of the oil of mint: then take four ounces of bole-armoniac, as much sanguis draconis, and as much fine bean-flour, or wheat-flour, as will thicken it: bring it to a thick salve, spread it about the affected part, and renew it as it drieth.

*A perfect cure for any sinew strain.*

Take a live cat, cut off her head and tail, then split her down the chine, and clap her hot, bowels and all, upon the strain, and let it stay there for forty-eight hours.

*Markham's balm, for any strain, wind-gall, pain, or swelling.*

Take ten ounces of the purest goose grease, and melt it, put into it four ounces of oil of spike, and an ounce of the oil of origanum: stir them very well together, then put it up in a gally-pot. With this ointment very hot, anoint the grieved part, rub and chafe it in

well, holding an hot bar of iron before it, and thus anoint it once in two days, but rub it in twice or or thrice a day at least, and give the horse moderate exercise. This is infallible.

*For swelled or goured legs, if by reason of the grease falling into them, or other accident.*

If your horse's legs be swelled because the grease is fallen into them, and there is no outward ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold water, or other outward helps assuage it:—then take a piece of coarse woollen cloth, and make a hose somewhat larger than his leg to reach from the lower part of his pastern up to his cambril or knee, and make it close and strait at the pastern, and wide above. Then take half a gallon of wine-lees, or else the grounds of lees or strong beer, set them on the fire, and boil them well; then put to them a pound of clarified hog's grease; when melted and stirred well together, take as much wheat bran as will thicken it, and bring it to the body of a poultice: with this poultice as hot as the horse can bear it, fill the hose, and close it at the top.

Let the horse stand two days; the third day open the hose at the top, but stir not the poultice, only take molten hog's grease, hot as the horse can suffer it, and with a spoon pour it into the poultice on every side, till it will receive no more: this will renew the strength of the poultice; then close up the

top of the hose, and so let the horse stand two or three days. You may then open the leg and rub it down, and if you find great occasion, you may apply a new poultice; if not, your cure is wrought.

Now if besides the swelling in the legs, your horse hath ulcers, or chaps, or scratches, pains, mules, and the like; then you shall apply the former poultice in all respects as aforesaid: after five or six days application, when you take the poultice away, take a quart of old urine, and put to it half a handful of salt, as much of allum, and half an ounce of white copperas, boil it till all be mixed and incorporated together; then with this water very hot, wash the sores once or twice a day, and after a little drying, anoint them with the ointment called egyptiacum, made of eight ounces of vinegar, twelve ounces of honey, two ounces of verdigrease, an ounce and a half of allum, boiled to that height till it come to red salve; it will both kill the malignant humours, and heal and dry up the sores.

*Another approved cure for the scratches.*

Take eight ounces of hog's grease, of brimstone, lime, gunpowder, each three ounces, eight ounces of black soap, and as much soot as will suffice to bring them to a salve; boil the hog's grease and soap together, and bring the other hard simples to a fine powder, and so mix all together, and make a black ointment,

with this anoint the sores once a day, after they are cleansed and made raw.

*For any splint, spavon, ringbone, curb, or other eard knot or excretion.*

Having taken a view of the excretion, clip away the hair a little farther than it extends, then take a piece of allumed leather, made just as big as the place you have bared, and fit it to the same: afterwards take a little shoemakers wax, and spread it only round the edge of the same, leave all the middle part empty. Then take of the herb called asparagus, bruise it in a mortal, and lay some thereof on the void place in the leather, and bind it fast on the bare place: if in the spring or summer time, when the asparagus hath full strength, let it lie two or three hours; but if in winter, then it is not amiss to revive the strength of the herb, but adding to it a drop or two of origanum, and let it lie a day. Be sure to tie up the horse's head for two hours for fear of biting it away.

When you have taken away the plaister, anoint the place with warm train oil, and you shall find no excretion.

*An approved cure for the swift-cut, or hewing on the legs whatsoever.*

Take a pint of white-wine, put to it two or three spoonsful of honey, stir them well together, and boil them till they be well incorporated and brought to the body of an oint-

ment.—Then take it from the fire, and add as much turpentine as honey ; stir all well together, and strain it. With this salve somewhat hot, bathe the sores twice a day. It is a quick cure.

*For any mange, scab, or leprosy whatever.*

First let the blood, then take a quart of old urine or vinegar, and break into it a quarter of a pound of best tobacco ; then set it on the fire where it may simmer and not boil, and let it stew all night ; then strain it, and with the water wash the infected place, whether in the mane or other obscure place. It is a certain remedy.

*For any founder, frettzie, surbait, or any imperfection in the feet.*

Pare them thin, open the heels wide, and take a good quantity of blood from the toes : then tack on a shoe somewhat hollow : take best frankincense, and rolling it in a little fine cotton with an hot iron melt it into the foot betwixt the shoe and toe, till the orifice where the blood was taken from be filled up. Then take half a pound of hog's grease, and melt it ; mix with it wheat-bran till it be thick as a poultice ; then stop up the horse's foot with it as hot as possible ; cover it with a piece of an old shoe, and splint up, and let the horse stand for three or four days : then if necessary, you may renew it, otherwise the cure is wrought.



*To make hoofs grow quick, tough and strong.*

Take seven ounces of the juice of garlic; two pound of hog's grease; an handful of ass's dung, or else cow-dung: mingle and boil them well together: with this stop the horse's foot, anoint the crownets of the hoofs, and the effect is great.

*A general salve for any sore swelling.*

Take turpentine, black soap, hog's grease, green treat, and pitch, of each a small quantity; mix and boil them well together, and apply it warm to the part affected.

*For a pearl, pin, web, or film on the eye.*

Take a new-laid egg, roast it very hard, cut it length-ways and take out the yolk, fill the white full of white vitriol in powder, and close it up again. Roast it again till the vitriol be melted, then beat the egg, shell and all in a dish, strain it, and with the liquid dress the eye.

*For grease fallen into the legs, and for the scratches.*

Take train-oil, nerve-oil, oil of bays, of each half a pint, and the size of an egg of allum:—boil them well together, and having cleansed the sores, and opened the poultice if there be any, with this salve anoint the place. It is a speedy cure.

*An approved cure for the glanders.*

Take a gill of verjuice, three spoonsful of

salad-oil, and two of aqua vitæ; put it equally into each nostril, being blood-warm, then ride the horse speedily for a smart space, only spare him when he coughs, then set him up warm, and at noon give him a warm mash. If you find him grow sick, give him warm milk from the cow.

*To stop the glanders until you sell your Horse.*

Take a pound of green elder bark, beat it in a mortar, and strain it, then add a quart of ale and give it to the horse: do so for three mornings together.

*An approved cure for the pains, mules, rats-tails, and the like.*

Take half a pound of green vitriol, boil it in half a gallon of water, with allum, mustard, sage, and hysop, of each an handful. The night before you apply this, anoint all the sores with strong mustard after they are made raw: next day wash them with the water, the cure is sure.

*To help a Horse that galls between the legs.*

Take a raw egg, and crush it between the horse's legs; rub the gall well therewith, after the sores are made dry.

*To help or hide interfering for a short time.*

Tie a cord to his dock, and having made many hard knots thereon, draw it between his legs, and fasten it to his girths; or rub a great quantity of starch between his thighs.

*The best known receipt for brittle hoofs.*

Take a pound of dog's grease, and clarify it with rosemary; then mixing it with half as much cow-dung, boil it, and stop the horse's foot therewith.

*To cure the scratches.*

Take a small quantity of verdigrease, red led, and soap; mix them together and apply it: let it lie three days and nights. You must cut the hair close. *Or*, Take soap and salt, mix them together in your hand, keep his feet dry, and tie a linen cloth about them, it will cure them. *Or*, Take verdigrease and burnt allum, mix them together and apply it, keeping the horse dry.

*Proved.*

*For the farcy.*

Take a handful of rue, ten cloves of garlic, and pound them together; add a little aqua vitae, and strain them through a cloth; then dip a little black wool in it, and put it in the ears equally, then sew up the ears together: afterwards cut the horse's forehead, and put into the cut the inner rind of elder, about an inch long. Keep wet from falling into his ears the first day and night.

*Proved.*

*To cure the canker in the mouth.*

Take half a pint of best white-wine vinegar, half a pound of best roch allum; a handful of red sage: boil them all together, and wash the horse's mouth and tongue.

*Proved.*

*For a cold.*

Take new butter unwashed, and without salt, mix it with brown sugar-candy, anniseed. and liquorice; if the horse rattles in his head, put in two cloves of garlic made in balls. Do so for three mornings together. *Proved.*

*For a beast that staleth blood.*

Take one quart of strong beer, and a red herring cut into small pieces, let it lie a steeping in the ale; give the beast it with a horn, it will stop the in-bleeding. *Proved.*

*For the botts.*

Take salt and water, and give it to the horse in a horn.

*For a Horse that treadeth on the heel.*

First search it well to the bottom, and take out all the gravel, and wash it with stale urine, then take a good handful of nettles, and a good handful of salt, put them in a cloth, and bind them to the sore; do this two or three mornings together, then set the shoe on with a leather under it: pour in some hog's grease scalding hot, after that pour in some scalding rosin, and shortly after put in some wheat bran. *Proved.*

*For a stroke or bite on the eye.*

Take a little honey or grated ginger, mix them together, and put it into the horse's eyes with a feather: do so for three mornings together. *Proved.*

*For the swelling of a Horse's back.*

Take flax, or flax-tare, and the whites of eggs and wheat-flour, beat them all together, it will take the swelling down. *Proved.*

*For a strain.*

Hog's grease is very good for a sinew-strain, or any other part of a horse.

*For a Horse that is mangy.*

Take a gallon of strong ale, a pound of tobacco stalks, half a pound of allum, a pint of salt, a little mercury; boil these all together, until they are boiled half away; the day before let the horse bleed, and curry him: when the horse is dressed, wash the manger with scalding water, and smoke the saddle with allum, brimstone, burnt hay, or straw. *Proved.*

*For the spleen.*

Make a plaster of Oxycroceum, and spread it upon sheep's leather; lay it to the pain, and let it lie till it comes off itself. *Proved.*

*A ghster to expel wind*

Take two spoonsful of fennel-seed and two of anniseed, and bruise them: a little camomile, of each half a handful. *Or,* Take a quart of posset-drink; of penny-royal, pellitory of the wall, of each an handful; of mallows and plaintain, each half a handful; of cummin and sassafras-seeds, each one spoonful bruised; one spoonful of camomile flowers; boil them down to half the posset-ale, take half a pint



thereof, dissolve therein half an ounce of the electuary called *Electuarium de Baccis Lauri*.

*Another*.—Boil one spoonful of cummin-seeds with a few camomile flowers, in posset-drink. It is good to drink for the wind, for one that is costive in his body. *All proved.*

---

*How to order, feed and keep an Horse, for pleasure, hunting, or travelling.*

Rise early in the morning, at day-light, or before, according to the season of the year, and sift the horse three pints of good dry oats, put to them an handful or two of spelted beans, hulls and all, and give them to the horse.

After he hath eaten them, curry him with a comb, dust him, then curry him with the brush, then dust him again, then rub him with your wet hands, afterwards with a clean woollen cloth, then pick all obscure places: afterwards comb his mane and tail, saddle him, and ride to water: warm him very moderately before and after, and bring him home dry.

Then clothe him up after you have rubbed his head, body, and legs, and let him stand in his bridle more than an hour; give him the former quantity of oats, &c.

After he hath eaten his oats and beans, put into his rack a small bundle of hay, and let him rest till after dinner.

When you have dined, give him the former quantity of provender, and let him rest till the

evening, only renew his hay if there be occasion.

At evening dress him well as in the morning; and ride him to water, and do as in the morning.

When you come home and have clothed him up, let him stand in his bridle as before: give him the former quantity of provender, and let him rest till nine o'clock at night, at which time give him the former quantity of provender and a bundle of hay, and let him rest till morning.

This you may do at home, where the horse hath rest, but if you be either travelling or sporting, so that you cannot observe those particular times, then you must divide the whole quantity of meat into fewer parts, and give them as convenient, observing to give the least quantity before travel, as a third part before mounting, and the remainder after you dismount.

You must not imagine, because I prescribe five several times of feeding in one day, that it will over-charge you or over-feed your horse: on the contrary, when you look into the true proportion, it cannot be denied but you must allow him one peck a day.

If you intend to give a heat, such as hunting, galloping, or travelling, (which I recommend twice or thrice a week) observe all things as before, only the night before give him little or no hay.

In the morning early, before his heat and dressing, give him three or four handful of clean-sifted oats, washed in strong beer, then dress him, saddle him, and give him his heat.

But if it be sudden and violent, then let it be till the horse hath emptied himself very well.

After his heat, rub him very well, and bring him into the stable.

When clothed up warm, let him stand on his bridle at least two hours; then give him a little bundle of hay, and an hour after feed him, as hath before been shown, only with the first oats give him a handful of clean hempseed.

At night give him a little warm water, and an hour after give him his provender, and a good bundle of hay, and let him rest. Next morning do all things as usual.

Let him stand on litter night and day; yet change it often, and keep the floor clean.

If you intend to travel in the morning, give him little or no hay the night before; if you journey in the afternoon, then give him little or no hay in the morning.

In journeying, ride moderately the first hour or two, and afterwards at your pleasure: water before you come to your inn: if you cannot, then give him warm water, after the horse is fully cooled.

Trotters-oil is an excellent ointment, being applied very warm, and well chafed in, to

keep your horse's limbs and sinew's nimble, and to help stiffness and lameness.

Neither wash your horse nor walk him ; the first endangereth foundering in the body and feet, and breedeth all surfeits ; the latter is the cause of all strong colds, which turn to glanders and rottenness. If necessity compels you to either, rather wash your horse's legs with pails of water at your stable door than in any river. As for walking, rather sit on your horse to keep his spirits stirring, than to lead him, and with dull spirits receive all mischief.

---

#### AN ORDER HOW TO BREED HORSES.

##### *The choice of your stallion and stud-mares.*

You must observe that your stallion and stud-mares be both of good and lively nature, and not subject to any natural diseases. For as heavy horses and mares will breed colts of heavy nature, so if they be infected with any natural disease, their colts for the most part will be troubled with the said disorder.

##### *Wild mares are not best to keep for the race.*

It is proper that you handle all your stud-mares, and make them tame and easy, whereby you may have their work, which cannot hurt their taming ; if they be soberly handled, you may be sure at all times to remove them

from one pasture to another, to bring them to be covered, and to take their colts from them without great trouble, whereas wild mares are not only cumbersome to keep, but also often destroy the colts in their bellies with their rashness, when you should handle them or any of their fellows.

*At what age your mare is first to be handled and covered.*

The best age to tame your mare is at two years old and more ; you may the year following, when full three years old, put her to the horse to be covered, which in my opinion is the best age to put her first to the horse, although some are of opinion that two years is the best age.

*How to enforce your mares to come to be strained.*

You may most conveniently bring her to be covered by your stallion, if for four or five days before you bring her to your great horse, you cause her to be put together with some small stoned-nag, into some close fenced pasture, kept for that purpose, where he may woo her, that she may abide your great horse, taking care that he be not unfettered longer than some diligent man do look on ; for if the nag be at liberty at any time after she be disposed to take the horse, he will be sure to cover her, though he be lower than her by a cubit.



*The order of covering.*

When you perceive that your mare will abide the nag, and shows other tokens that she is desirous to be covered, you must cause your great horse that shall cover her, to be provendered, and not to drink much the night before. In the morning, at sunrise, lead him to your mare in some place where neither of them can leap out: when he hath covered her twice or thrice, let her remain feeding on grass, with her colt by her, without water; but let your horse be taken up, well rubbed and provendered till next evening; then put him to your mare at the place where you left her, and let him cover her as often as he will that night, except you see him chafe so much that he will mar himself.

*How to use your mare when covered.*

Take your horse from her the second time, till the morning following, at which time, (except your mare be satisfied) you must put him to her the third time, and when he hath covered her as often as he will between four o'clock in the morning and eight o'clock before noon, take up your horse, and let your mare be led into some water, to the middle, where she may drink, but not too much: then let her be turned to the whole stud, where no horses must come for a month at least.

*To prevent mares from going barren.*

When you have caused all mares to be

covered, you must, in the month of July, or beginning of August, get a mare or two which has not been covered that year before, and force them to be horsed by such means as before appointed: when they shall be ready to be covered, you must turn them with some other stallion (not your best horse) among your stud of mares, and by his covering the mare or mares turned in with him, shall cause such of the others as did not conceive at the first covering, to come to that horse, whereby you shall be sure to have no mare barren all the year, but to have of every mare a colt, though not by your best horse.—You may suffer the above horse to run amongst your mares three weeks or a month: but if you turn him into your stud without a mare ready to be covered, he will beat all your mares, and hurt all those that had conceived before.

*The best season for your mare to be covered.*

The best time of the year to have your mares covered is from the end of May to the end of July, then will your mare (which always goes with foal eleven months) foal in such time as she shall find plenty of grass to nourish herself and colt; whereas, if you suffer her to be covered in February, March or April, she will foal so early in the year, that oftentimes being bare, and not covered of the winter past, she and her colt suffer for want of feeding.

*To diet a stallion for the time he shall cover.*

Although your stallion, standing at hard meat, will not miss to get a colt on your mare going to grass, (if she be ordered and enforced as before) yet the best diet for him the whole time he shall cover, is grass: when he hath tasted of the grass with them, he will like his hay the less: there is more danger of breaking his wind by feeding on hay than on grass.

*How to use a breeding mare when she foals.*

Your breeding mare, that hath a colt in her belly, must be taken from the stud fourteen or fifteen days before she foals, and with some other gentle mare or gelding be put in some rank pasture, well fenced for that purpose: it will make her lusty and soon ready to be covered and able to foal without danger, and also to give plenty of milk to her colt when first foaled.

*How long a horse will serve to cover a mare.*

Your stallion, if well used, will serve for six or seven years, to cover every year seven or eight mares, and do you service the rest of the year besides; whereas, turned abroad to your mares, he can do you no other service, nor will he last above three years.

*The best age for a horse or mare to get or bear colts, and how long they will continue good.*

The best age for the horse or mare to get or bear colts is, for the mare, from three years old

till ten : for the horse, from four to five years till twelve. After that age the colts of them wax heavy, weak and slothful.

*What season of the year is best to wean the colts from their dams.*

The best time of the year to wean your colt is at Candlemass or Shrovetide, after the time your colt is foaled ; wherein you must use much diligence, for if your colts be not well weaned, summered and wintered, the first three years, viz : the first year when he moaneth for his dam, he shall seldom or never come to be a good horse. Therefore, when you wean your colts, you must bring them to some house for that purpose, out of the hearing of their dams, wherein they must be penned, and not let abroad the first fourteen days : you must have a pasture adjoining, wherein they may play and feed every fair day after the fourteen days past, from the time you begin to wean them till the grass be fully sprung in May, and put them into some such pasture as commonly your milch kine be fed in, where, by feeding in high and rank grass, they may neither hurt their reins, or grow thick necked : nor for want of feeding hinder their growth, but by feeding in short sweet grass prove well till they have forgotten their dams.

*What feeding is best for colts for two years old and upward.*

It is well known that wet lying and want

of food in the winter, and old rank feeding in the summer, from two years old upwards, injures most colts: for as want of good food and bedding in the winter, doth breed a heartless, ill shaped horse, subject to all cold and watery diseases both in the body and limbs, so over rank feeding in summer, chiefly from two years old upwards, doth breed an evil reined and slothful horse, ever apt to be foundered, and to catch the glanders and cough upon every cold. The best method of feeding your horse-colts, from two years old upwards, for the summer-feeding, is where he may have a large walk and hungry short feeding; yet not so bare but that he can, by travelling for it, feed himself full once in a day, and that he hinder not himself of growing. Always keep your horse colts from knowing any mare till they be five years old.

*The way to handle a sturdy horse.*

If at the first coming into the stable, before he will suffer his keeper to handle him, and to take up his feet, do not put any meat before him, but let him take all his food out of your hands, so shall you make him gentle and tame without stripes or striving: the order before appointed in his breaking, being the colt of a tame mare, and fed some part of every winter at hand in the house, will acquaint him with you, and make him almost tame



before he be taken up : this colt will seldom prove a fearful or blenching horse.

*The using of horses after they be handled.*

Whoever doth use to keep his horse bridled after riding till he is in good temper, and almost cold, and do not give him water nor meat, being hot, neither doth ride him fast upon a full stomach, shall seldom or never have his horse lame or sick, if he breed him as aforesaid, before he taketh him up.

*What feeding is best in the winter for mares and weanlings, of two years old.*

In the winter feeding you must use one order for your mares and weanlings of two years old in several places, which is a hovel or house made for them, adjoining to your winter pasture, wherein you must some time in bad weather, in a rack made for that purpose, give them some fodder, and be sure that they be brought into that house every night that is like to prove wet, but in frosty days and nights it is best to pin them abroad.

You must keep one pasture close to the house in which you feed your mare-colts in the winter time, which pasture shall not be fed in before Shrovetide, because that time and the middle of May, before which grass is not sufficiently sprung in the most places for horses to feed on, is the most time of danger to hunger bane of all the year : in which time, if your colts growing all the summer follow-

ing, will make your colt mares so bare that they shall not be able to foal or give their colts sufficient suck.

*At what age colts may best be handled.*

When your horse-colts have been bred as aforesaid, the best age to break him is when he shall be full four years old and above; or if you can spare him, and have good close ground to keep him in, rather at five years old and the vantage, for then will his joints and sinews be strong and well knit, his hoofs tough and not brittle, his eye-sight good, his chine strong, so that you cannot hurt him neither in breaking nor in reasonable riding; besides he will remain a good horse till he be twenty-four or twenty-five years old, whereas, if you take him up at two or three years old, as is often done, you shall find him afterwards many times blind, brittle-hoofed, weak-backed, full of wind-galls and splints, and shew himself to be an old stiff horse, before he comes to be ten years of age.

## APPROVED RECEIPTS

### FOR CURING ALL DISEASES INCIDENT TO HORSES.

---

*To draw out a thorn or nail in any place.*

Take house snails, seethe them in butter, and apply them; they will draw out any thorn or nail: or the root of reeds bruised and bound to the wounded place with a linen cloth. He may run out, but to stand is best. *Proved.*

*A perfect drier of a green wound or other sore.*

Take soap and quick lime, mix them well together, before you lay it to, wash the wound or sore with a little white-wine vinegar, then apply it. A marrow-bone burnt, pounded to powder, and strewed on the sore wound, is a great drier. *Proved.*

*For any anbury.*

Take a hot iron and make it very sharp: then take the anbury in your hand, and sear it off to the bottom with the iron red hot: then mix a little verdigrease powdered and train oil, heat them, and anoint the place once a day till it be cured. *Proved.*

*For the flaps in a horse's mouth.*

To know this, you shall perceive his lips to

be swelled on both sides of his mouth, and that which is in the blisters is like the white of an egg : cut some gashes in it, then rub it once with salt, and it is cured. *Proved.*

*To rot a sore or swelling.*

Anoint the sore or swelling with cold bacon grease, once in two days, till it be soft, then open the skin with a penknife at the bottom of the sore, and let out the filth ; then heal it with your healing salve. *Proved.*

See the water and green ointment.

*Directions how and where to lay a wound open  
—and how to avoid the veins under it, either  
in body or legs.*

When you cut a sore open, be sure always to let it drain at the bottom : to miss the master vein, if it lie lengthways in the body, be sure to cut under the vein : If a sore upon the leg that lies just over the vein, then cut it side-ways of the vein right up and down. If a sore is hollow a great length, either in body or legs, then cut a hole at the lowest place, that the filth may drain from the sore the better : then put your finger in under the vein, and when it is past the vein upwards as far as it will go, cut at your finger's end another hole ; and, if you see occasion, turn your finger to another place, and at your finger's end cut another. If you chance at any time to cut a vein, put in a piece of hare's

skin with the wool on, or rabbit's wool, and it will stop the bleeding.

See receipt to stop bleeding in veins.

*The way to put in a French Rowel.*

Upon the lowest part of the horse's breast to that side that is lame, you shall, with a sharp knife, cut the skin through, not across the breast, but right down, half the length of your finger; then put your finger between the skin and the flesh, and raise the skin from the flesh round about the hole the breadth of a sixpence, then take a piece of upper leather and cut it round, cut a small hole in the centre, then take a needle and thread, which you will stitch through the leather—then take a clean tobacco pipe or quill, which cut so that the wind may be blown through it, put one end into the hole in his breast, pointed upward, and blow in the wind, beating it upwards to the top and over his shoulders:—when you have blown it two or three times, run the needle and thread once through the rowel and once through the skin, and draw the rowel into the cut: when you have thus placed the rowel in the cut, with the hole of the rowel just against the hole that you have cut in the breast, so that it may not move, then with your needle and thread run a stitch or two over-across the cut, to keep in the rowel: when you have done thus, anoint it with butter, and let the rowel stand a week



in the hole, and then cut the thread and take it out. This is the best rowel. *Proved.*

Your breath must not smell of tobacco when you blow the skin up; if it does, the place will swell the more.

*An excellent green ointment to heal any old or new wound quickly.*

Take a handful of water-betony, as much of comfry, mug-wort, red sage, sage of Beth-lehem, by some called Jerusalem sage, southern-wood, rue, and rosemary, of each of these a handful; boil all these in a pint of May-butter, and as much mutton-suet: and when it hath boiled a while, take it off the fire and strain it through a cloth, and put it into a pot for your use. This ointment will last good a year. *Proved.*

Before you use this ointment, wash the wound with the water which you have in receipt thirty-eight.

*To take a film off an Horse's eye.*

Take as much Dialthæa as the size of a walnut, and put to it the powder of verdi-grease, as much as a hazlenut; mix them well together, then every day put into his eye as much of it as the size of a pea. This will take off any film whatsoever. *Proved.*

*A medicine to keep back humours from a wound, so that it may heal the sooner.*

Take two pints of tarter, or dregs of white-wine vinegar, and add the size of an egg of bole-armoniac; a handful of white or bay

salt, and a handful of great burdock leaves, or the roots: wash the swelled place and round about the swelling, with this once a day; it will hasten the cure very much, and apply to the wound your healing salve or ointment.

*Proved.*

*Another for the same.*

Take a pint of verjuice and put to it a little camphor, cut very small; boil them together a quarter of an hour, and when almost cold, put it into some glass or pot, and wash the swelled place round about once a day with this till it be healed with other medicines.

This will quicken the cure of any wound or sore, where humours do fall down to it, whilst you do apply other medicines to heal up the sore or wound. These compositions are only to keep back humours that hinder sores or wounds from healing.

*Proved.*

*A rare receipt for a farcion.*

Take mullen, by some called higtaper: it hath a great woolly leaf, and groweth close by the ground, upon the banks of ditches, or on the highways; chick-weed, groundsel, and wood betony, of each a handful, cut them small, and boil them all in a quart of ale, and when luke-warm, put in a little quicksilver, and give it him to drink fasting. The third day after give him the like proportion, and warm water all the while to drink and to stand in.

*Proved.*

*For a horse that hath his fundament fallen out,  
or a cow that hath the mother fallen out.*

Take an armful of willow-boughs, and dry them on a hot hearth: when they are dry, sweep the hearth clean, and set them on the fire and burn them to ashes; then take the ashes and searce them through a fine boulder, and before you strew on the powder of the ashes, wash the fundament with warm water, to make it as warm as the body; then strew on the finest of the ashes, and put the fundament up into its place; then tie a cord to the horse's tail, bring it between his hinder-legs, and tie it to a sursingle under his belly pretty straight: by this means his fundament will be kept up, and in a very short time it will be knit firm and strong again. If the mother of a cow comes forth, use but the aforesaid means, and you will find a perfect remedy.

White pepper, beaten finely, and searced through a fine searse, the fundament being well warmed with water or milk, and afterwards with a warm cloth, and the pepper strewed upon it, and so put up, and her tail tied close between her legs, you will find it is very good. A bullock's marrow-bone, burnt in the fire, and beaten to fine powder, is a great and good drier and healer, and will cause a new skin to grow on a wound.

The inward and outward bark of a willow tree first dried, and afterwards burnt to ashes on a very clean hearth, and the ashes sifted

through a very fine boulder, they are good to dry up a sore, and are likewise a great binder for looseness in horses or cows' bodies.

*All proved.*

*To kill lice of horses or cows.*

Take a quantity of hog's grease, and anoint the horse underneath the mane, and upon the ridge-bone of the back, and it will soon cause all of them to burst.

*For a stub or other hurt in the foot.*

Take bees-wax, pitch, hog's grease, and turpentine; boil them together in an earthen pan, put in the turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and stir it well together: make the wound clean, and pour it in scalding hot: dip tow in it, and stuff the place where it is hurt, and it will heal in a short time. This will last a year. *Proved.*

*To cleanse any wound, old or new.*

Take the roots of elder, beat them to powder, and boil them with English honey. It is good to cleanse any sore old or new. But observe, before you dress any wound, to wash it clean with white-wine vinegar, and then dress it with your salve. *Proved.*

*For the sleeping evil.*

The signs to know it are as follows: The horse will stand sleeping in a corner continually, with his his head hanging down to the

ground; it taketh away the memory. The cure is to be performed thus: let blood on both sides of the neck in the morning fasting before he drinks: let blood also in the third furrow in the roof his mouth, and after he hath bled well, give him this drink: take of camomile and mother-wort together three handfuls, cut them small, and boil them in two quarts of water half an hour, and give the horse a pint once in two days fasting: the third day give him the rest fasting, and three or four hours after give him warm water, and a little comfortable mash, made of ground malt, put into scalding water after it is taken off the fire: keep him in the house warm, the time of the cure, and fume his head as you do for the staggers.

*Proved.*

*To stop bleeding at the nose.*

The chief cause thereof is the thinness of the vein in the head; you must let him bleed in both the plate-veins, then wind a thumb-band of wet hay about his neck, and throw cold water upon your thumb-band till you see the blood to stanch; the thumb-band must be so long that it may be wound from his ears to his breast very lightly.

*For the falling evil in a horse.*

The falling evil will cause him suddenly to fall down, and lie sprawling and foaming at the mouth, like a man that hath the falling-sickness: you shall know whether he be sub-



ject to fall often, by feeling him by the gristles of his nose, which will be cold if he be subject to it. The cure is to let him bleed on both sides of his neck: after he hath bled in the morning before he drinketh, give him this drink: take mistletoe that groweth upon an apple-tree, the leaves are like ivy-leaves; dry it and rub it to powder, and use it at leisure: give him of this powder one spoonful in half a pint of sack, and keep him in the house till he be well, and give him luke-warm water to drink.

You may add to the mistletoe three drams of the electuary, called Theriaca Diatessaron, or a dram and a half of the oil of pepper.

*Proved.*

*For an old or new cough, or the heaving of the lungs.*

Take the root of gentian, slice it, dry it and beat it into powder, give the beast as much of this powder as will lie upon a shilling, in half a pint of his urine warmed: give him this fasting once in three days, and so continue every third day till you see his cough and heaving to abate or quite gone: he must be kept in all the time of his cure. This for an old cough or heaving of the lungs is the best cure.

*Proved.*

*For a canker in the tongue.*

You shall see his mouth and tongue raw within, you shall know it by his stinking

breath and his roping slavering: take the full of an egg-shell of roch-allum, boil it in three or four spoonsful of white-wine vinegar, with a spoonful of English honey, and a handful of columbine-leaves cut small: wash his tongue once a day till it be whole: it will be cured in two or three days dressing: you may tie a rag about a stick and wash his mouth with it.

*Proved.*

*For a vein that swells upon letting of blood.*

Take white and black pitch, and rosin, of each an equal quantity, boil them together, and lay it on hot with a flat stick, and then flock it, this doing once in four or five days, will take down the swelling: do it all over the swelling, and repeat it if it doth not succeed at first. He must stand in with dry meat all the time of the cure. You may anoint it with the oil of populeon, or apply soap and brandy.

*Proved.*

*For a navel-gall.*

Cut off the loose skin first with a knife, and apply this salve to it; mix as much as a walnut of verdigrease, with a spoonful of dialthæa, and a pint of train oil, and it will cure it: if it be old and hard, cut out the crush, and sear the wound within with a hot iron, and then dip some cotton in the green ointment, and put it in as a tent.

*Proved.*

*For a horse that pisses blood.*

Take a spoonful of tarragon, and steep it

in white-wine and as much poppy seed beaten together as will lie on a shilling: give this in the white-wine, fasting, and it is a certain cure. *Proved.*

*For the mules.*

You shall know this by the starting of the hair, above the fore-part of his hoof on his after leg, and by the dew that stands on his feet above the hoof. Take linseed-oil, and black soap, of each a like quantity, boil them together, and before you anoint his sore, always wash it clean and dry it, and then anoint it with the aforesaid salve, and it will cure.

*Proved.*

*For a horse burnt by a mare.*

You shall know this by the soreness of his yard. Take a pint of white-wine, boil a quarter of a pound of roch-allum, when cool, it must be squirted into the yard with a syringe as far as possible. A few times will cure him. *Proved.*

*A precious ointment that will cure any wound.*

Take half a pint of best sallad-oil, and put it into a skillet, then put to it a quarter of a pound of rosin; boil these together, and when boiled put in a little verdigrease in powder: stir them well together and keep it for use:— If the wound be hollow and deep. put in a tent of this ointment to the end of this wound, and anoint it also. Train oil and verdigrease

melted together, will heal and skin any wound well and quickly.

*Proved.*

*For a farcion.*

First give him the drink mentioned in the receipt which you are to give once in three days. You must in the morning give him the drink, afterwards sear the head of every bud with a hot iron, then take yellow arsenick, beat it to powder, and mix as much as a hazlenut with a spoonful of black soap, and lay on a little one time and not oftener, and no where else but just on the top of each farcion, the bigness of a pea will serve, and within one week you will see them all drop out: afterwards anoint the holes with sallad-oil once a day till they be whole. Be sure to do as directed, for arsenic is rank poison and a great eater.

*Proved.*

*For sole-beated, by going without shoes.*

First pare him close towards the toe, then take a pen-knife, and with the point cut a little through the bottom of the hoof, half an inch from the toes, and right over the vein, let the vein bleed a gill, then set on his shoes pretty hollow within the feet, afterwards boil tar, tallow and turpentine together, and pour it into his foot scalding hot, and stuff in wool after it to keep it in; you may put in flat sticks between his shoes and the bottom of his hoof, and it will be cured by once putting in.

*Proved.*

*For a pricking in the foot.*

If a horse is pricked in the foot, when he standeth still he will mostly stand upon that toe, if at any time a smith prick a horse, then before you take off his shoe to pare his foot, take your pincers and try, by nipping him, where the ailment lies, or by knocking the nail upon the head with your hammer; when you have discovered the place, take off his shoe, and pare it by degrees with the butteris and drawing-knife, when you have found the bottom of the wound, take turpentine, fresh butter, and a little pitch, boil them together, and pour it in scalding hot, then dip some tow in the same, and stuff it well in betwixt the shoe and the foot, you may take a piece of upper-leather or sole-leather, and lay it between the shoe and the tow, or you may splinter it in with sticks. If it be a long channel nail that stuck into his foot as you rid him, pluck it out, heat it red-hot, and put it into the hole as far as it went before: then melt turpentine, fresh butter and black pitch, and pour it in the nail-hole scalding hot; then clap on the shoe, and stuff the foot with toe. This will certainly cure. *Proved.*

*An ointment to skin or heal any wound or hurt.*

Take two spoonsful of dog's grease, one of black soap, and the size of a hazlenut of rochallum burnt and powdered; put the burnt allum in when the others are melted and taken



off the fire, and stir them well together in an earthen vessel, and it will keep a year.

*To take down any new swelling, whether it be broke or not broke.*

Take two pints of red wine vinegar, and boil it in four handful of fole's foot leaves, not cut but wrung to pieces with your hands : when it begins to boil, put in two handful of bay-salt, and when dissolved, take it off the fire. When you want to use it, heat it as hot as you can bear you hand in it, and anoint the place once a day till it be assuaged.

*For a quitterbone far gone and hard to cure.*

Take off a quarter of the hoof right under the quitterbone, that it may drain the better ; take a drawing knife and draw it down to the quick on both sides and below, then take hold with a pair of pincers, below the piece of hoof, then pull it away : when it is off, lay a piece of hare's skin to it lightly to stanch the blood, and do not look to it for twenty-four hours ; then take the hare's skin away, and wash it once with wine vinegar, and scald it with butter and salt boiled together as hot as possible, to kill the rankling, and keep it from dead flesh : do this three times, once every other day : then take as much as a walnut of verdigrease powdered, and a gill of wine vinegar, and a gill of honey ; boil them together with the verdigrease, and keep continually stirring them whilst boiling, which must be

half an hour : then take it off the fire and put it in a pot, and anoint the wound with it once a day till it be whole, when it is whole then anoint the hoof to make it grow, with tar, tallow, turpentine, and dog's grease boiled together ; put in the turpentine a little before you take it off the fire, and stir it well ; keep him dry in the house the time of the cure. If you possibly can cure him otherwise, do not pull off the hoof, for it will take a long time to cure. It is a certain way, but should not be tried until all other ways fail.

*For a foundered horse.*

To take out the soles of his feet, you must pare the foot thin, then at the end of the frush you must cut the hoof. Cut the middle of the sole just at the frush's end, in the shape of a hen's tongue, and raise it a little with the point of your knife. When you have cut and raised the little piece at the frush's end, then take your pen knife, and with the point prick the vein till it bleeds ; the vein lies right under the little piece in the middle of the foot at the frush's end : when it hath bled, close down the piece of hoof again, and let him stand in the stable the time of the cure, and not drink his water abroad. When you see him halt, and you think it is festered enough between the sole and the quick. round about the bottom of the hoof, being thus festered, the sole will come out easier by a great

deal, and with less danger of pulling away the veins with the sole of the foot:—if you let it fester in this manner, before you pull it out, take your drawing knife, and draw the hoof to the quick, round about the sole, within the hoof: when done, then raise the sole at the toe, and take hold of it with a pair of pincers and pull it upward to the heel, and so pull it quite out, then apply hare's-wool to stop the blood, and within twenty-four hours remove the wool, then wash the sole of the foot with urine, and set on the shoe, and put in pitch, turpentine, and hog's grease, melted together, dip wool in it, and apply it to the bottom of the foot: stuff it with splinters, or a sole of leather to keep it in: apply this medicine three times in a week or ten days.

You must never take out the soles of both fore-feet at one time, for then he will not be able to stand. I will give you the practice of another, which in my opinion is far more easy for the beast. First cord the foot-lock hard, that it may not bleed, then draw round about the sole to the quick, and pull out the sole. It will not bleed at all after you have pulled out the sole, so that you need take no care to stop the blood. As soon as you have pulled out the sole, wash it with urine and put in the af resaid materials, and after you have set on the shoe, stuff it as before directed.

*Proved.*

*For a splent.*

You must cast the horse, then beat the place with a stick until it is soft, and fleam it in three or four places upon the splent, and squeeze out the blood with your stick and your finger and thumb. Take as much hog's grease as a walnut, and as much bole-armoniack and brimstone; beat these two last to powder, mix them with grease, spread it upon a sheet of grey paper, and lay it upon the splent, then heat a brick very hot, and dry the medicine in with it, then melt some black pitch in an iron pan, and dip some flocks in it and dab it on close all over the splent, that it may stick fast, and when the flocks comes off, the splent will come out: but if the flocks come out before the splent, lay on more till the splent comes out, as soon as it comes out, wash it with a little white-wine vinegar, and anoint it with sallad-oil and turpentine, melted together, and cooled: use it once a day, and the splent will come out and be whole in a week. It makes a great blemish, and takes away hair and flesh, and sometimes the hair come no more.

*Provd.**For a great splent.*

Beat it and fleam it, as you were directed in the other; then take as much crown-soap as an egg, and mix it with as much bole-armoniack, lay it on a piece of grey paper, and

dry it in with a hot brick, as you did the former. It is much the same as the former.

*Proved.*

*An excellent receipt for a great or small splent.*

Take a piece of leather twice as broad as will cover the splent, then take cantharides, (Spanish flies) and beat them to powder; take one eighth of an ounce of them, and a spoonful of nerve-oil, rub them well together, and lay them upon a piece of leather, and bind them on for eight or ten hours, then take it off and stroke it down with your fingers and thumb twice or thrice a day, till you see it quite fallen. This medicine will dissolve the splent into water, and it will sweat out water by doing it with your finger and thumb every day. If it be a great splent, lay it on twice; if but a small one, once will serve. He must stand in all the time of the cure; you may ride him after you have taken the medicine off. Make no more than you use, for it will not keep. This medicine will not diminish, but sink it flat: it must not be applied to a splent that hath been touched before, where the swelling still remains, and the hair is off, and the sink very thin: it is too strong, and will soon eat the thin skin to pices in such a case. *Proved.*

*A water to cure any wound in man or beast.*

Take half a pound of bole-armoniac, quarter of a pound of white copperas, two ounces of



roch allum ; beat the allum and copperas to powder, and melt them together in a pipkin : when cold put the bole-armoniac with them into a mortar, and beat them all together to very fine powder : then take half a gallon of spring-water, and set it on the fire in a close skillet, till it be boiling hot, put it into a clean pitcher, and add two spoonsful of this powder into the water, and stir it well before you let it settle. When it hath stood to settle two or three days, then skim off the top froth, and pour off the water into another pitcher, clear of dregs. When you use this water, either for man or beast, warm it as hot as can be endured, and when you wash a wound, let the wet cloth lie a little while on it, and wet a double cloth in the same water and bind it on, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and afterwards apply the green ointment, which is mentioned in page 89. *Proved.*

*A receipt to cure a horse pestilence.*

Take of worm-wood, rue, celendine-roots, a handful each, cut them small, and boil them in a quart of aloes milk till comes to a pint. then strain it, and add half a pound of fresh butter. and give it to the horse in the morning fasting, pretty warm, and keep him from drinking for two days ; if he does drink. let it be cold water, and let him eat grass.

*Another receipt for febula, or pestilence.*

Take of storax, Benjamine, and betony, an

ounce each : quarter of an ounce of English saffron ; these being beaten all to a powder, put them into a quart of new ale, and give it to the horse to drink. Let him have no warm water, but keep him without drink for two days, and let him eat grass, if to be had.

*For the yellows.*

You may know this by faint sweating at the roots of his ears, and the whites of his eyes will be yellow : first let him bleed in the neck veins, or on both sides of the neck ; then take elder-leaves, celandine, and camomile, of each a handful : cut them small, and give them to the horse fasting, in a pint and a half of the best beer, heated lukewarm. You may run your cornet-horn into the third roof of the palate of his mouth ; keep him warm, and give him warm water to drink for a day or two, and this will cure him. *Proved.*

*For a chest-founder.*

To know this, he will go crimpling, and stand straddling, and wish to lie down. Take a little oil of pepper, and bathe it well into his breast, rub it in well at first, then dry it lightly with a hot iron. This is a perfect cure at the first trial.

*For a swelling under the jaws when a horse hath the strangling.*

Take bacon-grease and anoint it, if hard it will soften it by twice anointing, and when

it is full ripe, let it out with the point of a pen-knife; when it is all out put in some white salt. If it be a sore in any other place but the throat, rot it with bacon grease, open it and let it out, then heal it with the green ointment. You must take care not to cut the veins. *Proved.*

*For a sore.*

Rot it first with bacon-grease, then open it in the midst, and let the hole be low enough, so that you can put your finger in from the middle of the wound downwards, cut it in the midst, and slash it quite down to the bottom, it will drain the better and heal the quicker. Dress it once a day, and heal it with your green ointment. Before you apply the green ointment, wash the sore with the rare water to heal any wound, and dry it with a linen cloth—This water and ointment will heal any wound, old or new, if you do as directed. If there be any proud flesh in any sore, scald it with butter and salt, and it will eat it off, and help to heal it presently. *Proved.*

*To make a horse piss that is troubled with wind-cholic, or obstruction in the bladder.*

Take a quarter of a pound of castile-soap, scrape it small, add two ounces of dialthæa, and mix them well together in a mortar, and make them into the shape of a wash-ball, and keep them for use, they will last a year. One ball, crumbled into a pint and a half of

strong beer, made scalding hot, then let it stand till lukewarm, and then give it to the horse with a horn. This will cause him to empty himself as long as any thing be in him. Let him fast an hour after he takes it.

*Proved.*

*To cure a poll-evil.*

You may know it when it begins to breed, by the top of the head growing bigger than ordinary. If it be large, take a hot iron and sear it round about the poll-evil till the skin look yellow; then take another red-hot iron, shaped like a cross, and make as many holes with the point of this last iron as the cross will give you leave, and no further: make all the holes with the point of this last iron, within the compass of the seared place; the bigger the seared circle is around the poll-evil the more holes you make.—These holes being thus made, take a piece of yellow arsenick, as big as a grain of wheat, and put one into each hole, at the same time, lay on every hole over the arsenick, a piece of black soap to keep the arsenick in; afterwards beat half the size of a walnut of arsenick to powder, and mix it with black soap, and anoint the place where the iron seared it round, but no where else, and within three weeks it will be ready to come out; the arsenick will eat to the bottom all that is within the compass of the ring; if you see it hang out by a little at

the bottom, then you may venture to cut it out, otherwise let it be three or four days longer, then cut it out close to the bottom, and wash it with the water that is good to cure any ulcer or green wound; if you discover with your instrument any hole at the bottom, or suspect there is dead flesh there, squirt the aforesaid water with a syringe to the bottom, till all the dead flesh be eaten out; then anoint it with sallad-oil, upon a feather's end, once a day, till it is quite well. If the hole goes forward to his ears, let him stand in at dry meat: if it goes backwards, let him run about at grass, because by his holding down his head the filthy matter cannot go further, but must come back to the main wound. If in summer, when flies are numerous, anoint it with train-oil: if a poll-enil or fistula is overgrown with proud flesh, scald it with butter and salt, and it will remove it.

*For a fistula.*

The marks of a fistula are thus:—The fistula hangs on either side of the top of the crest. The same way and the same means will cure this as you used to the poll-evil: with the instrument with a cross you must make seven holes, and do all things as in the case of the poll-evil. Make three of the holes upon the top of the neck or crest, in the middle of the fistula, and two holes on each side.

*Proved.*



*For plague, pestilence, garget, or murrain, in any beast.*

You must not let blood in this disease; you shall know it by these signs: he will hang down his head, and discharge foul thick matter at the eyes; he will go weakly and staggering, and his head will oftentimes swell very big; he will lose his flesh suddenly, and yet feed well.—To cure, take of diapente dialphaera, London treacle, mithridate, and saffron, of each the size of a hazle-nut; of wormwood and red sage a handful each, the size of a hazle-nut of rhubarb, and two cloves of garlick; boil all these in a quart of beer, till reduced to a pint and a half, then give it to him lukewarm, fasting, and keep him very warm; afterwards give him a mash of ground-malt: let him drink warm water for a week, and sometimes give him oats soaked, and now and then a little sweet hay:—it is his sweating that performs the cure. If one drink will not do, give him another three days after. Half the quantity will be sufficient for a cow if she have the same disease.

*For a horse or cow poisoned by licking venom, or is over-gorged by feeding greedily upon clover grass or turnips.*

If a horse or cow swells as if going to burst, if he drinks before you give this medicine it will hurt him; if he be not quite gone when you give it him, it will cure in a quarter

of an hour.—Take a quarter of a pound of castile-soap, thin scraped, put to it two ounces of dialphera, bruise them in a mortar, and make them up in balls as big as a wash-ball, and lay them by till you have need of them. Dissolve one ball in a pint and a half of strong beer scalding hot, and give it him lukewarm: if compelled to give it quickly, crumble the ball very fine into the beer and give it with a horn. *Proved.*

*For a horse or cow that makes red water.*

Take three or four onions, a pound of lean beef roasted on the coals till you may pound it to powder, the size of an egg of bole-armoniack, and a handful of coarse salt: beat them well together, and put them in a quart of strong beer, give it to the beast; and shortly after give her a pint of cheese runnets. Do this once or twice fasting, and let the beast fast two or three hours after it, and it will cure. *Proved.*

*For the mad staggers.*

The signs of this disease are:—to foam at the mouth, seem dull headed, and will have a blue film over his eyes, and stray much up and down: be sure to let him bleed in both veins of the neck, in a day or two after he complains, and in the third furrow of the palate of his mouth, with the point of a cornet-horn: you may run an awl into the gristles of his nose, above his nostril, the

bleeding at his nose and mouth will ease the pain in his head. To cure, take a handful of rue, three cloves of garlick, a spoonful of salt, a spoonful of vinegar, and two of aqua vitæ; bruise all these well together, and put it equally into each ear with a little wool after it: put the liquor in with the spoon, then the herbs, and afterwards the wool; then tie or stitch the ears up with a needle and thread very fast with two listing garters; afterwards fume him at the nostrils through a funnel with the stalks and peelings of garlick, beaten in a mortar with mastick or frankincense mixed together: of these make balls as big as a bullet, lay them upon a chafing dish of fresh coals, and the smoke will pass through the funnel into the head and ease and clean the brain. Fume his head three times a day, until you see him mend; at the same time give him as much of wild poppy-seed as will lie upon a sixpence, in a half pint of beer, up his nostrils: if you cannot get this poppy-seed, give him white-poppy water, a spoonful and a half at each nostril every morning: he will appear as if dead for a time, and this sleeping will much refresh him: after he hath taken this water you will see him twist and turn, and at last tumble down. Let him stand in a very dark warm room, and give him well soaked oats and mash of ground malt:—his drink must be cold water, and take the stuff which you put in his ears out after twenty-four

hours ; put in wool or lint after it.      *Stitching*  
it is better than a garter      *Proved.*

*For the water farcion.*

It is caused by the horse's feeding upon low watery ground. To cure it, make an iron like a fleam, heat it red hot and strike it easily just through the skin in many parts of the swelling, but no where else, and a quantity of green oily water will discharge itself ; afterwards wash it with chamber-lie and salt, as hot as you can endure your hand in it, three or four times, and it is a certain cure. If the swelling be very big, mix as much bole-armoniack as the size of a walnut with the salt and chamber-lie, and boil them together and wash it.      *Proved.*

*For the vives.*

You may see them grow in a roll betwixt the hinder part of his jaw-bone and neck ; if they get to the roots of his ears, there is great danger : let blood in both his veins, then take two spoonsful of pepper, as much hog's grease, and as much vinegar, and work them together, and put them equally into each each ear, and put a little wool or flax in afterwards ; then stitch up the ears for twenty-four hours.

Let him stay in the stable all the time : give it him fasting ; he may take his usual food and drink, only let him stand in the house for three or four days after it.      *Proved.*

*For the wind cholick.*

It comes by reason of long fasting, for the wind gets into the bag-gut with one end, and when the horse comes to meat, he feeds so hungry that he never chews his meat, and it does not digest, but stops the wind in the gut, causes abundance of misery. It heats the slime in the gut so much that the horse will do nothing but tumble, and wish to lie upon his back with all four feet up. The cure is, first prick the horse in the mouth and let him bleed well, then rub his mouth well with a handful of salt, and give him this drink. Boil a pint of brime, without skimming it, put to it a handful of fresh hen's dung, and give it him lukewarm, then ride him an hours before he drinks, and three hours after it. The signs: he will stand crimpling with all four legs together, and lay himself down very easy, and appear rather full than empty.—If he be cold in the mouth no cure; if warm, there are hopes in four or five hours to abate the pain. Either present cure or present death.

*Proved.*

*For a film in a horse's eye.*

Take a piece of very salt beef, dry it in an oven, and beat it to powder; take liquorice-stick, dry it and beat it to powder: searce it through a fine searce and blow them into the horse's eye once a day, and it will remove the film by two or three times doing; if a rheum



attend the eye at the same time, dip a little flax into some melted rosin, and lay it in the hole over the horse's eye.

*To cure a mallender.*

First rub it with a dry cloth, then anoint it with crown-soap and red mercury precipitate, mixed together: when you have anointed it, pluck the hairs which grow in it and upon the edge; then dress it three times more, once in two days, anoint with sallad-oil, and it is cured. Before you anoint it rub it dry.

*Proved.*

*For an opoplexy or palsey.*

It will take him either in the neck, so that he cannot put down his head to the ground, or in the after parts so that he cannot rise: the sinews of his flank will feel hard. Take a little of the oil of Peter, anoint the place, and dry it with a hot iron; if you anoint his after part, then lay some litter from a hot dunghill on it, and fastening it on with a cloth, renewing it four times a day; if it be in the neck, after you have anointed it and dried it in, make a thumb-band of the longest and hottest dunghill litter, and wind it loose about his neck: let it be so long that it will reach from his shoulders to his ears. *Proved.*

*For a farcion that lies all over the body of a Horse.*

First, bleed those buds that do not die, then wash them with the warm water you have

for old ulcers, and this will cure them : wash them once a day, then take half a gallon of running water, two spoonsful of powdered hemp-seed, and two handful of rue cut small : boil all these together till reduced to a pint and a half, and give it fasting : do this once in three days, or three times in nine days, let him stand in the night before, and not drink : you may, three or four hours after it, give him a mash, or warm water, and afterwards hay.— This drink given to a cow or bullock, after letting blood in the neck, will make them thrive exceeding fast, if in the spring, and then turned out to grass. If a cow or bullock do not thrive, but is lean, scurvy, hide-bound, and her hair stands right up, let her blood and give her this drink, and she will mend quickly. *Proved.*

*For a farcion only in the neck or head of a Horse.*

First let blood in the neck veins, then take two spoonsful of the juice of hemlock, two of the juice of house-leek, and two of sallad-oil : mix them well, and put them equally into each ear ; put a little wool or tow after it, and stitch up his ears ; at the end of twenty-four hours, take all out, give him a mash in two or three hours after, and warm water to drink. You may give him any meat, and wash the buds with the water used for any old ulcer, until he be whole. *Proved.*

*A sure medicine to make a horse scower that is hide-bound or molten, or that do not thrive or fill, and to lay his coat if it stands up.*

If a horse's skin sticks to his ribs, he is hide-bound, and if his coat stands right up and not lie smooth, or if he do not fill well, or is molten, then he is surfeited, out of health, and foul. To cure all these at once or twice, give him this scowering medicine : take half an ounce of aloes powdered, put it into a pint of butter, made afterwards round ; put the aloes in three or four balls of this butter, and roll the balls in as much of the powder of jallop as will lie upon a sixpence : wash down the balls with a pint and half of strong beer lukewarm, and let him fast three or four hours after, then give him a mash of soaked oats, and warm water to drink for two or three days. Ride or work him moderately, and the horse will thrive the better. *Proved.*

*To stop a thin scowering in any beast.*

Take a gill of verjuice, and the size of a walnut of powdered bole-armoniac, stir them well together and give it to the beast.

*Proved.*

*To kill lice in cattle.*

Take a woollen list as broad as your hand, soak it well in train-oil, and wrap it quite round the beast's neck, and it will kill them. No flies will come near any wound or sore where this is applied.

*To make brittle hoofs grow quickly and firmly.*

Take seven ounces of garlic, three handsful of rue, seven ounces of powdered allum; two pounds of old hog's grease, a handful of ass's dung or cow dung, mix and beat them all well together, and boil them well; stop his feet, between his shoes, and the bottom of his feet, with this mixture, and keep it on with the sole of a shoe; let it be betwixt his foot and his shoe—anoint the outsides of his hoofs all over; do so till you see his brittle hoofs to grow tough and strong. *Proved.*

*To heal a navel-gall, sore back, or set-fast.*

Take a gill of train-oil, boil in it as much powdered verdigrease as half the size of a walnut. This medicine will heal any navel-gall, &c. and no flies will dare to come near it. *Proved.*

*For a sinew-strain in the legs.*

It is always upon the hind sinews of the leg, above the fet-lock joint, near the ankle-bone; it will be swelled and knotted when strained; you may see it by his gate, and if you squeeze it between your finger and thumb, he will start at it. Take a little nerve-oil and turpentine, mix them together, and lay it on till it be well; always dry it in well with a hot iron. Anoint it two or three days between and keep him in all the time of his cure

*A scowering drink.*

When you let a horse blood, save it in a bowl, and put to it a handful of salt, and stir them with your hand, that it may not clot, and give it to him with a horn to drink fasting: if it be the blood of another horse it matters not, give him water to drink once.

*Proved.*

*For brittle hoofs.*

Anoint them with an equal quantity of dog's grease, turpentine, and tar, boiled together, and it will make them grow strong and tough, put in the turpentine a little before you take it off the fire.

*Proved.*

*For a horse that is molten and breaks out.*

If you see swellings appear like bags, about the girding place, under the horse's belly, first anoint them every day with bacon grease until they be rotten, then lance them with the point of your penknife, and press them with your hand to force the filth out, then anoint the swelling with train oil, and wash the inside of the swelling with a rag fastened to the end of a stick and dipt in it. If the swelling run under the belly to the cods-ward, then make an iron in the fashion of a fleam, heat it red-hot, and strike it just through the skin in six or eight different places, according to size of the swelling: when you have  
it, and squeezed all the filth out, pour



on salt and chamber-lie scalding hot, and anoint it with train-oil inside and outside once a day, and as it heals, once in two days. Take care that the cold do not get in it, if it does it will swell much; you must anoint about the wound, all over the swelling, with the oil of populeon, it will take it down.

*Proved.*

*A scowering drink to cleanse his kidneys, if they be pained.*

First heat a pint of strong beer in a skillet, skim it, put in a little treacle-jean, and give it him lukewarm; three or four hours after it, give him a mash, warm water the first day and no longer. Let him stand in two or three days.

*Proved.*

*For a fleshy knot that moves from the place where it grows.*

If, by feeling of it with your finger and thumb, you feel it moving, and soft upon the place where it grows, then with the point of your knife slit a hole in the middle and cut the knot out; if it bleeds much, sear it with a hot iron to staunch the blood, then stuff the wound with hare or rabbit's wool: next day take out the wool, and wash the wound clean with white-wine vinegar, dry it with a clean cloth, and heal it with your green ointment. Before you anoint the wound, wash it with the water which you have for an old ulcer, if it grows rank:—tie a rag about it to keep

the dirt out, and dress it once a day till it be whole. *Proved.*

*For a cow that hath a garget in her dug or udder.*

You shall know when she hath a garget in her dug, for then she will not give down her milk, let her stand in the house or yard the night before you let blood; next morning fasting let her blood on both sides of the neck, then give her this drink: Take a handful of mullin, cut it small, and afterwards boil it a little in a pint of beer, and give it to her lukewarm, fasting. Once given will make her give down her milk freely. *Proved.*

*For a ring-bone.*

It grows just upon the instep, upon the fore-part of the hinder leg, just about the hoof, in a hard knob as big as a walnut. The beast must be cast, or else tie up his contrary leg with a strong rope, till you strike four or five holes in the ring-bone, at the very edge of it. Let the holes be an equal distance, then take white mercury, or arsenic powdered, as much as will lie on your flume, and put it into each hole, binding it on for twenty-four hours.

*For the same.*

Take best quick lime, bruise it very fine, and lay it thick along the swelled place, and bind it on with a linen cloth fast to the foot,

and lead the horse into the water a little while, afterwards unbind his foot, and he is certainly cured. When you apply the lime let him be near the water side. *Proved.*

*Observations on cattle, in the time of feeding, when there is great fulness of grass, as in the month of May, June, and July.*

In those months be sure to let them blood; for at that time of the year they never digest their meat so well as in the winter: those raw digestions hinder many inward passages, which causeth bad blood. Let them blood in the beginning of May, and keep them in some close yard the night before, and the night after give them a handful of hemp-seed. The pestilence, gargil and murrain, they are infectious diseases, and many times proceed from hard driving, heats and colds, hunger, and so forth, breeding corrupt humours, as drinking when hot, or feeding upon grass in low grounds after floods, when the grass is unpurged.— Sometimes it comes from the evil influence of the planets, corrupting the plants and fruits of the earth, and sometimes from cattle. These diseases are easily known, they will hang their heads, and water at the eyes, swell at the lips and cheek, and under the tongue, and sometimes at the roots of the ears. Separate the sound and sick at a good distance, let the sick cattle blood in the neck veins, and give each a spoonful of diapente in a pint of ver-

juice; if you cannot get diapente, take a spoonful of treacle-jean: give them a good quantity of old urine, and a handful of fresh hen's dung, stirred well together, and just warm, and keep him in the house a week afterwards. *Proved.*

*For a bite, blow, or film in the eye.*

Take as much white copperas as the size of half a walnut, in powder, the same of powdered verdigrease: mix them together in a mortar, and afterwards with the size of a walnut of fresh butter. Put the size of a pea into the eye every day until it be well.

*Proved.*

*For the same.*

Take Lapis Calaminaris, heat it red-hot, and dip it into a pint and a half of white-wine, and repeat it twelve times; then add unto the wine half as much of the juice of house-leek, and stir them together: dip a feather in this and dress it two or three times a day till the sight be recovered. *Proved.*

*A good scovering to make a beast thrive, winter and summer.*

Take a handful of groundsel or sertion, half a handful of red sage, half a handful of of dried or green wormwood stript, shred them all small, and boil them in a pint and a half of strong beer; when off the fire, put in a piece of butter as big as a hen's egg, and three

times as much of the powder of mechoacan as will lie upon a shilling: give him warm water to drink evening and morning, for three or four days. Give him a mash of malt once a day, or once in two days, if your horse do not fill well, and his coat stand right up staring, or he is hide-bound. *Proved.*

*For bleeding.*

If you let blood in the neck or temple-vein, you must always cord the horse.

*For a strangling in the spring.*

Take a handful of elder-buds, as much dried wormwood, half a handful of mercury, half a handful of tansey, cut these small, and boil them in a pint of strong beer, and it will serve for three drinks, allowing three days between each drink; give it fasting in the mornings, and a mash three hours after, and warm water to drink for a day or two; let him stand in all the while. If he be swelled between the jaws, anoint it with bacon-grease once in two days, till it be rotted, and then let it out, and heal it with your healing salves. *Proved.*

*To kill lice in horses or cows.*

Take a little quicksilver, and work it well with fasting spittle upon the palm of your hand till the quicksilver be killed; then take the whites of two eggs, and bray them with the quicksilver till they be as an ointment;



spread these upon a list that will go round about the beast's neck, let it be broad as your hand; cut away the hair, and they will come to it, and it will kill them. Rub some train-oil on several parts of the beast.

*To make a horse piss.*

Boil the size of a walnut of castile-soap in a pint of strong beer and give it him lukewarm, it will make him piss. *Proved.*

*For an inward bruise with any fume or stab.*

Take a pint and a half of strong beer. and an ounce and a half of bole-armoniac, boil them a little together, and give it to him with a horn, lukewarm. It is very good for an inward bruise of a beast. *Proved.*

*For a horse that hath torn his flesh about the belly, or elsewhere.*

Take a pint of sharp white-wine vinegar, boil in it two ounces of bole-armoniac; after it has boiled a little take it off the fire, and put in a little butter, and bathe the place grieved once in two days, and in two or three times dressing it will cure. *Proved.*

*For an old cold with a cough.*

Take as much butter as an egg, and cover it over the size of a walnut of tar, and roll it in the seeds and stripping of wormwood cut small, make it into two balls, and give them him in a pint and a half of strong beer, in the morning, fasting, having stood in the night

before; keep him in the house three or four days after, and give him warm water, the cold just taken off it, for two days. If you see he doth not fill well, and hath left off coughing, then four or five days after give him the same again, and order him as before. When you have given this, ride him a hand-gallop for three or four miles, till he sweat well, and when within a mile of home, ride him softly to cool him; set him up warm, litter him well, clothe him with a couple of warm cloths, tie him up to the rack upon the bit for three or four hours, when you unbit him give him a mash, or warm water, then clean hay, and take off one of his cloths: after one or two days you may work him moderately. This is not so good for a new cold as for an old one.

*Proved.*

*For a strangling in the guts; the cough of the lungs, for clearing the pipes and giving much breath.*

If your horse run for a wager, give him two of these balls a week before. Take more than the size of an egg of fresh butter, divide it in two, and mix half an ounce of anniseed beaten to powder, then make a pie of your butter and anniseed thus mixed, and put into each ball a spoonful of syrup of horehound, and close them up that the svrup may not come out: make the balls no bigger than a wash-ball, then warm a pint and a half of

strong beer, fill the horn with beer, and having pulled out his tongue with your left hand, put in one of these balls as far as you can, then hasten two hornsful of beer to wash it down; do the same with the other ball, then take his back, and ride him three or four miles a hand-gallop, till he sweats well, and when within a mile of home, ride easy that he may cool, then tie him up to the rack, cover him with two cloths, stuff him and litter him very warm, cover his head, and let him stand four or five hours before he drinks, and when you unbit him, give him a mash, or some lukewarm water, and some clean hay, and take off one cloth, and keep him warm. If this will not do, a week after give him the same again, and give him warm water but two days after it, and then cold water a week before your horse goes to grass: give this medicine three or four times a year, and it will keep him fat and in good health. If you give your horse too much at a time, and it makes him very sick, give him a pint of milk just from the cow. *Proved.*

*To cure the kernels under a horse's throat.*

First sear the kernels with a candle, then take butter, spread it on a red cloth, and rub it well in, and in a fortnight's time the knot will be quite gone; and if his nose runs it will stop when the kernels are gone; anoint the knots once a day for a week, in the time

of his cure. If it be in summer let him run out, and if in winter, let him stand in. *Proved.*

*For a cough of the lungs.*

The horse will cough hollow and grunting, and hang down his head when he coughs, his flanks will beat, he will fetch his breath short. Let him stand in the night before, the next day in the morning fasting give him a spoonful of the syrup of horehound, and another of the flour of brimstone, in a pint and a half of strong beer heated lukewarm, then ride him three or four miles till he sweats well, and walk him when within a mile of home. Litter and clothe him warm, and let him stand in about three nights if it be in summer: after that turn him out from ten o'clock till three, for two or three days, and then turn him out altogether; the more moderate you work him, the better he will thrive: it will take away his cough, clear his pipes, and make him thrive much after it. If there be a white, thick, clayey water near him, let him drink there, it is a warmer and more fattening water than any other; give him warm water only twice. This drink will clear his pipes, and drive the cold from his lungs; you may put in as much of the powder of macoachan as will lie upon a shilling three times. *Proved.*

*For a broken-winded horse.*

Take boar's dung, dry it to powder, and put a spoonful of it in two pints of milk, just

from the cow, and give it him. If it does not make him sick, give him two spoonful more of the powder, and in four or five times giving, it will perfectly cure him. It must be given every third day. *Proved.*

*For a cold, either in winter or summer.*

Take an egg-shell full of tar, half an ounce of red-stone sugar, half an ounce of anniseed, tobacco, and liquorice, beaten very small, two ounces of brimstone powdered, half a handful of rue cut small; stir and mix them well together, make them into two balls, and put a quart of strong beer lukewarm, and the first hornful you give him put a ball into it, and do so with the second and third, and give him the remainder of the beer; let him not drink for four or five hours after, and give him a mash, and afterwards hay: if it be in summer, let him stand in three or four nights; work him moderately every day and the beast will thrive the better. If once will not take away his cough, give him another, keep him warm, and it will cure him. *Proved.*

*For the scratches.*

Take a lump of black soap, a little fresh hen's dung, five or six oyster-shells put into hot embers all night, and beaten to powder: mix all these together as an ointment, and apply it to the horse's fore heels every morning and evening; the horse must not go into water until you see he is cured. Always rub



his heels very clean before you rub in the ointment, and you will find it a certain cure by two or three dressings.

*For the same.*

At night let his heels and legs be bathed in beef broth, next morning rub his legs clean, and apply this ointment to heal it. Take a little of gilts-grease, speck-oil, verdigrease, and train-oil, put them all into a pipkin, set them on the fire, and stir them till they be melted; once a day anoint him with the ointment, till his heels be well; chafe it and rub it with your hands, and keep him out of water and dirt till he be cured.

*For the same.*

If your horse's leg swells, especially in the month of March, ride him into some rapid water up to the mid-leg, and let him stand a quarter of an hour; then when you set him up in the stable, take a wisp and a pail of water, and dash the water against his legs till they be clean.—This will cure when they are not broken out but, only swelled. *Proved.*

*For feet foundering.*

That foot which is foundered he will set before the other. Pare him down to the quick, if he bleeds it matters not; then set on his shoe very hollow, and take flax or tow, and make a pretty thick cake thereof, spread Venice turpentine thick thereon, and lay it

over the bottom of the hoof, and put a piece of the upper leather of a shoe to keep it in; in three days after lay on a plaister as before. If his hoof grows again, pare him to the quick, and every third day lay on a new plaister till you see him go better; he must run abroad in low grounds; this plaister will draw down the humours exceedingly. If he has not been foundered long, this will cure him in a month or very little more; you may let him bleed at the toes, and let the place he goes in be clean. *Proved.*

*For the garget in the throat of a cow.*

It comes for want of water, and will cause a swelling under the sides. First cast the beast, then cut the skin through the middle of the swelling, and flea it from the flesh as far as the swelling goes; then take white wood ashes, sift it fine, mix them with some very stale piss, and wash the sores with it.

*Proved.*

*For a garget at the root of the tongue of a cow.*

It is the swelling under the root of the tongue which causeth her head and face to swell also, and to froth at the mouth; she will then forsake her meat, with often gulping in the throat.—First cast her in hot straw, then pull her tongue out as far as you can, and with the point of a sharp penknife slit down the middle vein right under the tongue an inch, and there will come forth black blood

and water, which comes from the gall ; then rub the place with salt and vinegar mingled together, and it will cure it. *Proved.*

*For the garget in the guts of either cow or bullock.*

The beast will run at the eyes, drivel and slaver at the mouth, and wear a sad heavy countenance. To cure, take an egg-shell full of tar, and put it down the beast's throat, having before procured a pint of verjuice and a small quantity of cloves beaten together ; boil the verjuice and cloves together, and when you take it off the fire, put in two handfuls of salt, and give it her lukewarm with a horn immediately after the egg-shell full of tar, and drive her to and fro till she dung. Keep her fasting four hours after.

*Proved.*

NATHAN SHAW'S  
APPROVED RECEIPTS.

---

*For a canker in the head.*

A canker is a disease in the head, and sometimes will set upon the eyes, and sometimes in the nostrils: you may know it by its rawness, and it will run a yellow water. Take half a pint of sallad-oil, one ounce of the oil of turpentine, three ounces of burgundy-pitch, and a little verdigrease powdered; put all but the verdigrease into a pipkin, and let them boil together a good while; then take it off and put in the verdigrease, and let them all boil together to a salve, but if you do not take care the verdigrease will make all boil over;—to prevent which, always have another pipkin standing by in readiness, if it boils over, put some into it, then mix them together again, set them upon warm embers, and let it gently boil till it comes to a salve, neither too hard nor too soft; you must stir it all the while it boils, take it off the fire and keep it for use. If you use this medicine for a canker in the nostrils, tie a rag round a stick, dip it in some white-wine vinegar and salt, and run it up his nostrils. When you have washed them clean, dip a feather in the cold salve, and run it up the nostrils once a day. If in the head,

face, or eyes, take a little tow and rub the canker till it bleeds, and when it stops bleeding, anoint it with a feather dipt in the afore-said salve, and strew some wheat bran upon the salve, it will hold on the better. Dress it once a day till you see it heal, and then once in two or three days; let him stand in all the time of the cure. *Proved.*

*For a dry scurvey mange in a horse, cow, dog, or other animal.*

First scrape off the scruff with an old curry-comb, or piece of a knife, then take two ounces of the oil of turpentine, and as much strong beer; mix them together, and shake them with a glass vial, and anoint the horse where he is peeled and mangy: a week after dress him again, if you see any running places, not else: tie him up with a strong halter till it hath done working, for it will smart terribly: when you have killed the mange, to make the hair come again, wash it twice or thrice with a little strong beer, and it will make the hair come thick and quickly. Let the beast stand in at dry meat all the time of the cure.

*Proved.*

*For a blow or any accident which causeth swelling about the head, face, jaws, &c.*

First let blood in the neck vein, on the side the head swells; if on both sides, let blood on both sides, then give him this drink to prevent a farcy: Take an ounce of tumerick



and an ounce of anniseed, a handful of red sage, wormwood and rue, of all three but one handful; cut them small and put them in a quart of strong beer, and give it the beast cold, fasting in the morning, and let him fast four or five hours after it; give him warm water to drink once; as soon as you have given him his drink, apply this charge hot with a flat stick, daub on the swelling a gill of aqua vitæ or brandy mixed with a little crown-soap; according to the size of the swelling apply these as a charge, and they will take down any swelling new or old. Soak it in with a red-hot iron, apply it but once, it will not come off for fourteen or fifteen days. It will sink it quite flat or break it.

*Proved.*

*For a navel-gall.*

Take brandy cold, and put it on with your hand or rag, it will take it down in a few dressings, if the skin be not broke.

*Proved.*

*For hard kernels under the throat.*

Mix soap and brandy together, and apply it to the kernels hot: then heat it with a hot iron, it will either sink them flat or break them.

*Proved.*

*For a new sinew strain.*

Apply soap and brandy once hot, and heat them in with a hot iron; first clip the hair away in the pastern just over the shackle

veins, and then let blood on both the shackle veins, and apply the charge. If the strain be before or behind, you must let blood and apply the charge, it will cure his lameness in forty-eight hours.. Do not ride him for four or five days after you have laid on this charge, it will come off in fourteen or fifteen days, and when you see the scruff to rise, anoint it with trotter's oil once in two days to strengthen the sinews, till he goes well: you may ride him in four or five days, and keep him out of the water, and it will be a perfect cure.

*Proved.*

*For an old sinew-strain that is swelled hard on the fore or after leg.*

First clip away the hair right over the shackle veins on the pastern, and you will see to strike the shackle vein the better; when it is done bleeding, apply two ounces of the oil of turpentine mixed with two ounces of strong beer, and put them into a glass vial and shake them well together; bathe most of it with your hand upon the vein or swelling, and three or four days after it hath done swelling, and begins to scurvy, lay a charge of soap and brandy; heat it well in with a hot iron, and it will take it quite down in a week or two: you may ride him in a week. When you see the charge to scurf and peel, you may anoint it once or twice with trotter's oil.

*Proved.*

*For any old, hard and crusty knobs, or swelling.*

First anoint it with an ounce and a half of the oil of turpentine, and as much strong beer mixed together in a glass vial, and bathe it with your hand, and three or four days after apply the charge of soap and brandy, and heat it well in: you may ride him in four or five days after. *Proved.*

*For old broken knees much swelled and hard, that have long been healed up.*

Mix an ounce and a half of the oil of turpentine and the same quantity of strong beer together, then bathe it with your hand upon the swelled knee; two or three days after apply the charge of crown-soap and brandy hot, and let it stay on till it comes off itself; it will much lessen if it do not take it quite down; let him stand in: The oil of worms is a great mollifier of a hard and bony part, and hard swellings. *Proved.*

*For a strain in the pastern, back, or sinews.*

A charge of crown-soap and brandy applied hot, and heated well in, is very good: keep him out of the water for a week after, till you see him go well. This soap and brandy is an absolute cure for a new strain or swelling hard as a bone, first anoint it with the oil of turpentine and beer, and in two or three days after apply the charge of soap and brandy, and it will take it quite down. *Proved.*

*How to boil the charge of soap and brandy to a salve.*

Let them boil till they come to a white salve, then lay it on with a flat stick. It will make a horse swell much, but within three or four days it will fall as flat as may be. For all this lameness the beast must stand in for four or five days: you need not take above a gill of brandy and a little crown-soap. If a horse be cast in a ditch and is much swelled and bruised by beating himself, let him blood in those veins you think most proper, and then apply the charge of crown-soap and brandy hot all over the swelling with a flat stick, and heat it in with an iron: let him stand in the house the time of the cure.

*Proved.*

*For a swelling, occasioned by wind or cold getting into a wound.*

To take out the heat and rankness of the swelling, anoint it all over with an ounce of the ointment of populeon; anoint it twice a day at first, and as it falls, once a day will be sufficient, and do nothing to the wound till the swelling be near gone, then wash it with chamber-lice and salt or salt and vinegar, and heal it with your healing salve. If a wound in the face or head, after removing the swelling by anointing it with populeon, you may discover the beast to have lost his sight by reason of some thick film that hath covered

his eyes, then slit a hole upon the bone of the cheek with a sharp pointed penknife, put in your cornet-horn, and work the point of it up between the skin and the flesh, close up to the eye; then take a bit of new canvass, cut it three square, and roll it up the length of your thumb, mix fresh butter and salt, and shake some salt upon the butter, spread it on both sides of the canvass, run it up into the hole, over it lay a little piece of canvass, with some burgundy-pitch spread upon it, to keep out the wind, and it will drain the eye very clear; afterwards put a piece of fresh butter and a lump of salt into the eye, and put in some butter in the hole above the eye. This will cure a blow in the eye when it appears impossible.

For a hot rheum, let blood in the temple-vein, and when the horse's eye-sight fails with hard riding or much straining, you must strike the flume across the vein, and then the rheum will stop, and the vein will knit up of itself; this is a great means to stop up the hot rheum that comes down to a horse's eye: when you let a horse bleed on this vein at any time, you must cord him about the neck, and when he has bled as much as you think fit, pitch and flock it to keep the cold out of the veins; for a hot rheum, hard riding, or over-straining, give this drink fasting to cleanse the stomach, viz: one ounce of tumerick, half a gill of aqua vitæ or brandy, two spoonsful of white wine vine-



gar, a quart of best beer, give them lukewarm, but if there be a kind of white glass in his sight, there can be no cure. If you have a young horse that you think will be moon-blind, then take up the temple-vein in the wane of the moon, using your cornet-horn as before, and put a piece of butter in his eye and in the hole above the eye. If it be a hot rheum his eye will water and look red below the eye, let him come into the cold as little as possible. If it be a thick white-blue film, though it hath been far half a year, do just as you are directed in this receipt. *Proved.*

*For a new hot inflammation or soft swelling, whether broken or not.*

Anoint it with the oil of populeon, and rub it in cold with your hand once or twice a day, until it be down.

*For a bruise or bite on the horse's cods.*

First bathe them in whey or warm milk, let it be as hot as the horse can endure it, bathe it three or four days together, then make a bag to keep his cods warm, and anoint them with cold oil of populeon once or twice a day till you see the swelling abate: apply the charge of crown-soap and brandy to remove the rest, and to knit the veins and strings of the cods: lay it on hot and heat it well: three or four days after ride him into a river or pit, up to the belly, and you will see it fall in a short time. If the cods be swelled much, and

it has been long done and is hard, then do not meddle with it. *Proved.*

*To keep in your medicine, and keep out the wind.*

Over your medicine lay a plaster of burgundy-pitch, and it will keep out the wind till you take down the swelling with oil of populeon. *Proved.*

### *Directions.*

If a horse comes to you with swelled legs, that hath been poisoned with other farriers' medicines, before you apply any thing to it, bathe his legs with whey as hot as he can endure it, to wash off the poison of their medicines, and to clean his legs: whey will not take off the hair, it is better than milk; if you cannot get whey take milk: after you have bathed it, you may act according to your judgment. This book informs you whether you shall take it away by drinks or ointment, or by both; see the receipt for a dry surfeit, and the receipt for a pocky farcion; the dry surfeit shows you the purge of aloes to be given inwardly, and other things to be applied outwardly to the hard swelling. If it be a surfeit that falls down into the legs before or behind, and breaks and runs moist, watery, or stinking filthy matter, then see the receipt for a foul, rank, pocky farcion, and give him the first drink there mentioned; one or two of those drinks will dry up the moist humours. If the crannies be very great where the filth

breaks out, and if the filth be like to rot the sinews of the legs, then see the receipt for pains and scratches, made of honey, pepper and garlic: this drink given inwardly, and this receipt applied outwardly to the crannies of the legs, are excellent; for the drink at once or twice giving will dry up the humours in his body, and the salve will heal up his legs suddenly and to purpose. This is enough to direct you, especially for dry surfeits that fall out of the body into the legs, and there settle and become very hard: likewise for surfeits that fall out of his body, and break, stink, and run watery, yellow, thick, or thin filth in the legs: if after you have made a cure of these, and see your horse gaunt and not fill well, then give him the purge of aloes to scour and cleanse him, and after that your cordial, white-wine and honey, all mentioned in receipts in this book, which is for a dry surfeit. When a horse's cods are subject to swell often, give him this purge of aloes that is for a dry surfeit, which is when the grease is melted, and afterwards settled and dried in his body. It is good for a horse that is gaunt and will not fill well, and we say is gut-fundered, and his hair stands right up. The cordial of white-wine and honey is exceeding good to beget and continue a stomach to his meat, being given after his purge, as you are fully directed in the receipt for a horse that

is swelled in his cods, and that hath a dry surfeit and runs at the nose.

*For a shoulder-strain.*

First tie up his sound leg very sure with a list or garter, then walk or drive him on three legs that he may lay the weight of his body upon the lame leg till he begins to sweat at the ears and cods with the pain; this is because you may see the plait-vein appear the plainer; then let down his lame leg and you will see the vein still plainer; if you cannot see the vein plain enough when his leg stands on the ground, heat a little water and clap it on with your hand upon the vein, and it will appear a great deal bigger: when you see the blood is come into the plait-vein, and the vein is plain enough to see and feel, tie up his lame leg again, and let him bleed in the plait-vein, on that side the bottom of his chest that his lame leg is on: let him bleed a quart or two; the greater the lameness is, the more let him bleed: after he hath bled a quart upon the ground, put into the bowl a good handful of salt, and let him bleed a quart or more into it, and stir them well together at the time he bleeds, that it may not clot; set the bowl by and stop the plait-vein with a piece of lead that will nip the mouth of the plait-ven together again that it may not bleed. You must have an ounce, or an ounce and a half of oil of turpentine, and as much strong

beer; put them in a vial, shake them well together, and bathe it well in about his breast with your hand, and all over his shoulder, and the bottom of his breast, between his legs, and half way down to his knees; bathe it and clap it well in with your hand, then take the blood and salt, bathe them upon the former; then set him up in the stable to meat, and with a list or garter tie his fore legs together as close as possible: the next day untie his fore legs, take him out and walk him, and if you see he goes any way well, ride him a mile gently, set him up again, and tie his fore feet again as close as you did before: if he goes not well the first day, walk him the second day, and do not ride him, the third day after his first dressing, do not only tie his legs, but flat a stick on both sides in the shape of a wedge, about the breadth of a sixpence, drive it in between the toes of his shoes, and the toes of his feet, fast, and always, whilst he stands still in the stable, tie his legs close, and peg him with a wedge; when you walk or ride him abroad, untie his legs and take out the wedge: do this every night and day till he grows sound, which will be in two or three days, if it be a strain newly taken: to let blood, and anoint it once with the oil of turpentine and beer, and once with the blood and salt, and tying his legs together and the wedge, will cure. When a horse hath pulled his shoulder out of place, and it is fallen the



breadth of a man's hand or more, or if he be splayed on the shoulder, do nothing contrary to what you are directed in this receipt, for if it be but lately done, it is a speedy cure for either.

*All proved.*

*For an old strain in the shoulder.*

The above mentioned last receipt is a most certain cure for an old hurt in the shoulder; in one week it will cure.

*Proved.*

*For the hurl-bone out of joint, or a little miscarried.*

The hurl-bone is about the middle of the buttock, and is very apt to go out of the socket by a slip or strain. The oil of turpentine and beer is very good, use it as before; after shaking it in the glass, pour a little of it just over the socket of the hurl-bone, and rub it in with your hand. It will cause the skin to purse up and be very sore, you must anoint him on the brown and thick part of the inside of the stifle, and anoint him down to the very ——. Drive a wooden wedge in the contrary foot, between the toe and shoe, and so let him stand day and night. If you see your horse mend and go better, you may ride him every day, and put in the wedge when you return, and he will soon be cured.

*Proved.*

*For a stiffling in the stiffling bone.*

If your horse be stifled, that you see the stiffling bone is out of its place, swim him in

a mill pool for half an hour till he sweats behind his ears, by which time the bone will be in its place again : then lead him gently home clothed, and keep him in the stable warm ; as soon as in the stable, wedge him on the contrary foot behind all the time of his cure, whilst he stands still in the house, and when dry, take soap and brandy as formerly, and lay it hot to the grieved place, and heat it well in with a hot iron : it will swell a little at first, but will soon fall ; it will strengthen the grieved place, and in a short time cause a perfect cure. Another :—You may, after swimming, peg him in the stable, and when dry, rub in half an ounce of the oil of turpentine, and as much strong beer, shake them together in a glass, it will cause it to swell something more than soap and brandy, and is a speedy cure. Swimming is not good for any strain, except to bring a stifle-bone into its place : the beast must stand in the stable all the time of the cure. *Proved.*

*A speedy cure for a sinew-strain, old or new.*

Let blood in the shackle-veins in the pastern, it will much further the cure ; take a fat cat, kill and skin her quickly, and bruise her bones and flesh, lay it upon a cloth, and bind it close to the sinew-strain from the pastern up the legs, as far as it will go and as warm as you can ; you must take out the cat's guts. After you let blood, bathe the sinew-strain

with aqua vitæ, and rub it in cold with your hand, then lay the flesh of the cat on a cloth to the place, and roll a cloth two or three times about the leg, because a cat draws and knits mightily. Let him not go into the water till he be cured. *Proved.*

*For a poll-evil in the head.*

If you take it at the first swelling, then take half an ounce of the oil of turpentine, and anoint the swelling as far as it is swelled, and let it sink and take its course for four or five days, in which time the skin will be shrunk up like a purse: at the end of five days, if you see the swelling begin to fall, take burgundy-pitch and black pitch, of each two ounces, and one ounce of mastick, melt them in a pipkin, and spread it over the swelling: then take the shearings of cloth or flocks and put them on thick with your hand on the pitch till it be hot: when your plaster comes off, which may be in a fortnight or a month after, if you see the oil and the plaster has killed the venom and taken down the swelling, do no more to it. If it is much swelled when your plaster comes off, or there be proud flesh in it, then, if it be not broken, lance it, and if there be any dead or proud flesh in it, cut it out, and fill the hole full of fine flax or tow to dry the blood up, and let it lay five or six hours, then take it out and put in some of the medicine you use for a canker in the head

or face of a horse ; with this medicine dress it once in a day at first, and as it begins to heal, dress it once in two days ; it will heal it suddenly : cut a hole at the edge or lower part of the swelling to let it drain, and it will heal much sooner : throw on a good quantity of wheat-bran when you lay it on : when the plaster comes off, look upon the top of the poll-evil to see how far the dead, proud, white, jelly flesh goes ; cut it out with your incision-knife till you come to the sound red flesh : the veins will bleed very much when you come to the quick, let not that hinder you from cutting out all the dead flesh quite clear, only take care not to cut the white paxwax which runs along the top of the neck, and called by some a cross ; you can easily see it, if you cut it, his neck will fall and look scandalous. There is a white pith in a poll-evil, near the top of the neck by the paxwax, pull it out with your nippers, it will come out like a plug : there is no such thing in a fistula ; put some medicine to it and it will heal apace. Let no dead flesh be left in the wound, altho' it be ever so broad : the beast must stand in the time of the cure. The same cure is to be used for a fistula.

*Proved.*

*For a through splent on both sides of the leg, by some called a great bone scrupin.*

Tie the horse's head close to a strong post, then tie up his contrary leg, then bruise and

beat the splent on both sides with a blood-stick or bed-staff, till it be something soft: if he will not stand still, cast him with a rope; and after you have beat it soft, take a little of the oil of riggrum and rub it on both sides of the splent, and no where else: tie up his head for two or three hours, and his contrary leg: it will take off the hair a little, but it will grow again shortly after. If it be ever so big do thus three or four times, and in a week it will be quite fallen. Once dressing will serve for a small splent, or for a blood splent. You may turn him out.

*Proved.*

*For a malender.*

Clip away the hairs which grows about it, then rub the scabs off with a hair cloth, it will cause it to run a yellow matter: take a linen cloth and wipe away the filth clean; then take a little oil of riggrum and mix it with a little of your own dung, and lay it on with a flat stick upon a linen cloth, and bind it to for a week: then make it clean, dress it again, and it is a cure. After your first dressing, you may ride him or turn him out.

*Proved.*

*For a looseness in the body of any beast.*

Take a pint of red-wine, or claret, warm it and add an ounce of beaten cinnamon, and give it him a little warm: you may add the yolks of two new laid eggs: once or twice is



a cure:—give him warm water at night and cold water next day, and ride him upon it.

*Proved.*

*For a cold in summer, or when a horse does not fill.*

Boil a quarter of red-stone sugar in a pint of sack, when dissolved take it off the fire, and put in two spoonsful of sallad oil, and give it lukewarm: ride him hard immediately after, and give him warm water for three or four days after: keep him warm, and now and then give him a mash. *Proved.*

*For a sudden heat, as in hunting, racing, or hard riding, that the horse's grease is melted.*

If the horse be over-ridden and his grease melted, you may know it by the panting at his breast and girding place, and heaving at the flank; you shall see the night he comes in and next morning, that his body will be mighty hot. Take a pint of sack and an ounce of diascordium beaten small, mix them together, and give them cold to the beast at any time, but in the morning fasting is the best: give him warm water for three or four days after: give him soaked oats, boiled barley, and mashes of ground malt, keep him well littered and clothed warm. If he forsakes his meat, and you see he hath lost his stomach, give him two ounces of honey and half a pint of white-wine mixed together, and heated lukewarm, in the morning after he

hath drunk cold water : it will make him piss, clear his bladder, and bring him to his stomach again. After you have given him it, ride him a mile or two gently, and set him up warm, at night do the same, litter him well and keep him warm, for three or four days, or a week ; after three days give him the wine and honey. If he does not eat his food, and is bound in his belly and dungs very small, then give him this cordial two or three times, and two or three days betwixt each time—Take three pints of stale beer, a piece of household brown bread, boil them well together, then take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of honey and a quarter of a pound of fresh butter : give him this cordial lukewarm fasting, and ride him a mile or two every evening and morning ; clothe and litter him warm. This cordial will bring him to his stomach, and cause him to be loose-bodied and dung soft, although he be weak and have little or no stomach. Four or five hours after this cordial, the first thing you give him, boil half a peck of oats and a pound of fœnugreek together in water till they burst, pour the water from them, and mix some cold water with it, and when he drinks let him have this water : throw some of the oats and fœnugreek hot into the manger, and if he be loth to eat them, throw some wheat bran upon them. This course, taken in every particular, will bring your horse to a stomach, and rise

him suddenly. See the following receipt for a dry surfeit, and when the horse's cuds are swelled and he runs at the nose, and there you shall see the purge of aloes. A fortnight or three weeks after he is thus melted, and that you have give him the former things, to give him this purge of aloes, will do the beast good in this case. I am confident it is good : Or give him as much of the powder of mechoacan as will lie upon a shilling three or four times, in a pint of wine or a quart of strong ale. *Proved.*

*For a foundered horse.*

Tie a list of blood-cord hard about the pastern, it will keep the blood up in his leg so that it cannot come down into his foot : when you have taken out the sole, set on his shoe something hollow and broad, then untie the string about the pastern, knock the outside of the hoof and the blood will come pouring out : Let him bleed well, then put a handful of salt into the bottom of the foot, and put as much flax or tow into it as will fill the bottom of the foot : take two or three flat sticks, and lay them between the hards and the shoe ; a piece of stiff sole leather will do as well : at the end of twenty-four hours remove the tow, and take a handful of nettle tops, and a handful of salt, beat them together and lay them to the bottom of the foot, and take tow and splinters to keep them in : at forty hours end take the

hards away, and apply the same quantity of nettles and salt, mixed with the bigness of an egg of hog's grease : beat them all together in a mortar, and lay them to the sole of the foot, and tow and splinters as before : with this last medicine you may dress his foot once or twice more if you see necessary : after he goes a little well, set on another shoe formed with a broad web, and let it stand broad and easy, and in ten days the horse will go very sound : when you come at your journey's end, wash his legs clean, and when dry, make a poultice of a quarter of a pint of white-wine vinegar, and a quarter of a pound of sheep's kidney suet cut very small : let them boil and put three handful of wheat bran to it, after you take it off the fire, and stirred all together, make it like a thick poultice, and lay it to the bottom of the foot, then tow and splinters as before ; then spread the rest of the poultice upon a long linen cloth, and lay it hot to the hair round about the top of the hoof and the fet-lock, and let it come under the bottom of the hoof : let every poultice stay on forty-eight hours : three or four poultices laid to in this manner will do the horse much good, and cause his foot to grow and shoot out, and give him much ease, so that in a short time he will go very sound. If a horse be bruised in the bottom of his foot with a stone or any other thing, this poultice will give immediate ease. For a foundering the beast must stand

in till the bottom of his foot be grown again. It is best to take and cut but one sole at a time, because if you cut both, the horse will not be able to stand : some take out frush and all, and others nothing but the bare sole, and leave the frush. First cord the pastern, pare the sole, and raise it round about to the quick, as near as the inside, or the outward shell of the hoof as you can, with a drawing knife ; then raise the sole at the toe, and pull it out with a pair of pincers, but be sure not to break the veins in the foot. *Proved.*

*For a back swankt in the fillet of the loin ; a wrench in the back-bone ; a strain in the kidneys by being over-burthened ; or over-strained in race-running.*

If you see any of these mischances to fall upon the back, or hinder parts of your beast, then do as follows for all the mischances above mentioned.—Take a hot sheep-skin fleaced off a sheep newly killed, apply as hot as you can, with the fleshy side from his rump, all over to the midst of his back-bone, if it will reach so far : let it lay on twenty-four hours, and at the end of that time lay on another in the same manner if necessary : if the place be ever so bad, two hot sheep-skins will cure it with the help of the following drink, and if the hurt be not great, the sheep-skin alone will cure it. It will cause the horse to sweat much, draw out all the bruises, and strengthen



the back of the horse in a short time; but if your horse be so weak that he cannot stand or go, then take a couple of sacks or ropes, throw them over a baulk, and hang him for nine or ten days: when you first hang him, clap a hot sheep-skin to his rump and back for twenty-four hours, and at the end of the time, lay on another. In the time of this cure give him this drink if the strain be great: Take Polygonatum, called Solomon's Seal, three ounces; a quarter of a pound of Poly-podium of the oak; two handfuls of wood of garden betony, cut small, and if the roots be dry you may beat them to powder, if green, cut them small: mix and boil them in a gallon of strong beer till it be boiled half away; then take them off the fire, and add a quarter of a pound of butter, and a quarter of a pound of honey, and give it to the horse fasting three times in nine days, and warm water all the time to drink, with a handful of bran in it: give him a quart at a time of the drink. If you cannot get the roots of Solomon's Seal, try the others without it: let him stand in the time of the cure. You may add pennyroyal, clary and comfrey, to his drink, they are all knitting and strengthening herbs. *Proved.*

*For a new wound made with a stake, stub, or fork.*

First wash the wound well with butter and vinegar melted together, then take a clout,

tie it about a stick's end, dip it in Linseed oil, and run it to the bottom of the wound, anoint it well, and in a short time it will be healed. If the wind get in the wound and causes it to swell, anoint it with the oil of populeon round about the swelling: train-oil and verdigrease melted together will heal and skin any wound quickly. *Proved.*

*For a stub in the foot or heel; an over-reach with the after foot upon the heel of the fore-foot; a tread or cut above the hair, &c.*

Wash the wound with salt and water, and when dry, take a large onion, a spoonful of fine pepper, the size of an egg of crown-soap, beat them all to a salve, spread them upon a linen cloth, and bind it to the wound for twenty-four hours, and at the end of that time dress it as before, and so continue to do every twenty-four hours till it be whole. If this quantity of medicine be too little, make more: as you see it heal, dress it but once in two days. This salve will prevent a quitter-bone if you lay it to before it breaks. *Proved.*

*For a horse that is pricked in shoeing, and afterwards festered.*

First open it well, and take out all the corruption to the very bottom, as far as the nail did go; then take three or four house-snails, a little salt, as much soap as a walnut: beat all together, and lay it to the place that

was pricked for twenty-four hours till you see it begin to heal; then dress it but once in two days; and in three or or four dressings it will be whole: when you lay this medicine to the bottom of the foot, lay some flax or tow over it, and over that a piece of leather or splinters, to keep the medicine in: if it breaks out or is soft above the top of the hoof, lay some of this medicine to it, and bind it on with a linen rag. *Proved.*

*For a horse that is pricked with a long channel nail.*

First search it with your butteress and drawing-knife, till you find where the channel-nail went in: open it well, and give it all the ease you can; search it to the bottom with a little tow at your instrument's end, then drop ten or twelve drops of the oil of turpentine into the hole; take a little tow or fine lint at your instrument's end and dip it in the oil of turpentine, and put it in tent-ways; then mix a little crown-soap, a little salt and a little pepper beaten together, lay it over the former, and tow or flax over it, and a piece of leather and splints to keep all in: the shoes must be taken off when you dress it, and set it on again. Dress it once in twenty-four hours till it be whole. If you find, after three or four dressings, that the horse is in great pain, and you fear a breaking out about the hoof, then take out the sole

and apply the medicine as was formerly directed for a foundered horse, to make the soal come again. After his foot begins to grow again, take as much hog's grease as an egg, and the same of burgundy-pitch, mix them together, and lay a quantity of it in the bottom of the hoof, and tow or flax over it, and a piece of leather or splints over all. Dress it every day for three or four days; the grease and pitch will much nourish his foot and strengthen it, and prevent its drying up. Let him stand in the time of the cure.

*Proved.*

*For brittle hoofs.*

Lay the poultice to the bottom and top of the hoof and foot, as you have directions for a foundered horse. Lay that poultice to, and in three or four dressings, it will make his brittle hoofs tough. Let him stand in the time of his cure.

*Proved.*

*For a horse's yard foul and furred without, so that he pisses in the cod.*

Melt a little fresh butter in white-wine vinegar, draw out his yard, clear off the filth and wash it with the butter and vinegar till it be clean; squirt some of it into his yard with a syringe, it will much help him in this case.

*Proved.*

*When a horse will not thrive, and his coat stands staring. For an inward dry surfeit that causeth the cuds to swell. When the grease is melted, set and dried in his body and his legs swelled. For gut-foundered, when he is costive and dungs small. To procure a stomach.*

First make your purge thus : take an ounce of aloes, beat it to powder ; a quarter of a pound of fresh butter, mix them well together, and add a handful of wheat bran to them, to make them like dough or paste, then roll it up into five balls, hold up his head with a drenching stick, take his tongue in your left hand, and put in one ball to the root of his tongue if you can, that he may swallow it the better ; put your finger under his tongue, and give him a hornful of cold strong beer after it, then give him a second ball and a hornful of beer to wash it down, and do the same with all the rest ;—Then ride him a mile gently, and set him up warm ; let him not eat nor drink for five or six hours after it, then give him a little clean hay at night, not before, and some warm water to drink with some bran it : next morning give him warm water to drink as before, and ride him a mile gently, and tie him to a rack for an hour after, then you may give him cold, that meat he will eat ; at night give him warm water and bran again : the morning of the third day, give him cold water after he hath done purging, and before you ride him,



give him two ounces of honey and half a pint of white-wine heated a little warm, to make him piss, and to clear his bladder, and beget a stomach : then ride him a mile or two gently, and at night air him again, and so do morning and evening till he be well ; litter him well and keep him warm. If you see that after his purge, and after you have given him the honey and white-wine, he does not fall to his meat, but is still bound in his body, and dungs very small, then give him this cordial fasting two or three times, two or three days between each time. Take three pints of stale beer, a stout slice of coarse bread, boil them together, and when off the fire, put to it a quarter of a pound of honey, and a quarter of a pound of fresh butter ; give him all these together as a cordial lukewarm ; then ride him a mile after it, set him up warm, and tie him to the rack for three or four hours after it, then give him a mash of bursten oats or barley, and warm water with bran in it, till the horse come to his stomach and be loose-bodied.—The foregoing purge is excellent for a dry surfeit, and for a horse that is bound in his body and dungs small. The cordial of white-wine and honey is excellent for a horse that is weak and hath little stomach. When you give a mash of soaked oats for the foregoing diseases, to half a peck boil a quarter of a pound of fœnugreek, and put some of them into the manger hot : if he be loth to eat

because of the taste of the foenugreek, throw some wheat bran over them, and he will eat them: this is the only way to bring your horse to his stomach, and raise him suddenly. Concerning his swelled cods and legs, as soon as his purge hath done working, take the charge of soap and brandy, and dab it on his swelled cods or legs with a flat stick, as it comes boiling hot off the fire: three or four days after it hath taken its course, whilst he stands in the house, take and ride him into the river up to the saddle skirts, against the stream and with it, ten minutes at a time: wash him thus once every day, till you see the swelling quite down in his cods or legs; once laying on the charge is enough. If it be a dry surfeit, give the purge first, and afterwards the cordial of white-wine and honey: but if he has a cold, and runs at the nostrils, first give him the following drink made of anniseed, tumeric, brandy, vinegar, and beer, and three days after give him the cordial: when a horse is fat and lusty, and afterwards melted and the grease set in him, in this case use the purge first; but if he be fat and sick both together, then give him the white-wine and honey, and cordials, as you are before directed, to bring him to a stomach first, and when you have done that, then give him the purge, and order him after it as you are here directed. If there be hard kernels between his jaws and chaps at the same time,

the charge of soap and brandy laid hot upon them, and heated well in; once doing will either sink them flat or break them: if they break, wash them with butter and vinegar, and let them heal up of themselves.

*All proved.*

*For a moist, hot running surfeit, that falls out of his body into his fore-legs, and sometimes in his after-legs.*

This surfeit comes with colds and heats: when it fall out of his body in his legs, and runs hot, moist, or white yellow water or matter, the horse's breath will smell very strong, and his legs will swell and stink exceedingly; when this surfeit breaks in his body, and falls into his legs, at the first going out of the stable he will hardly draw his legs over the threshold, and he will be so stiff that he can hardly stir in the stable, and will hold up his leg to his midribs. Keep him fasting all the night before, or give him very little meat to keep his jaws from falling: next morning, before he drinks, let blood in both the neck veins, and let them bleed well; then uncord him and give him this drink following, which will much purge and dry up the gross humours in his body, and cleanse his blood:—take one ounce of aristolochia, one ounce of tumeric, and one ounce of dry anniseeds, beat the tumeric and anniseeds small, and grate the root of aristolochia; mix all these together

with a handful of rue, a handful of worm-wood, a handful of red sage, a handful of green fennel, take two ounces of fennel-seed, beat them small and put them all into an earthen pot; put to them three pints of spring water, and let them soak all night; next morning, before you give it him, ride him a mile till he be a little warm, and give it to him cold as it stood all night; after that ride him another mile, and let him stand upon the bit six or seven hours, then give him a little hay, and after that warm water and bran; the next morning ride him to the river, let him drink but once a day, and ride him two or three miles after it: at three days end give him the former drink fasting, and follow the directions before named in this receipt, and so continue doing, by giving the former drink at every three days end, till you see you have dried up the gross humours in his body, and caused them to cease running and swelling: you may work him three or four hours each day, to get him a stomach: in winter or summer keep him in the house with dry meat; when he is cured you may turn him out: wash his legs clean in some river up to the hams, and keep them as clean and as cool as you can all the time of the cure. One or two of these drinks given at three days distance, will dry up those humours in his body that feeds the swelling in his legs, cods or elsewhere: these drinks will make him run

at the nose white or yellow : if he falls from his meat, you may the third day after his drink, give him a cordial as it is set down in the foregoing receipt, then a drink, and then a cordial of white-wine and honey. If there be great chaps, or crannies, in his legs, even if the sinews be almost rotted off ; take two or three buckets of water and wash his legs clean, clip away all the hair close to the skin, as far as his legs are crannied or scabby ; then wash his legs with another bucket of water, and let him stand till they are dry ; take half a pound of honey, an ounce of beaten pepper, and ten heads of garlic ; beat them well together till they come to a salve, divide it into two parts, spread them upon a sheet of grey paper, then take a piece of broad linen, lay it on the paper and bind it on the crannied place, so that it will not come off : let this plaster stay on two days ; make a small thumb-band of hay, and wind it round his legs, and over the plaster : take all off at two days end, and wipe the chaps of every cranny clean, then lay on a fresh plaster, and do as you did before, in three or four dressings it will be whole. He must not go into the water all the time of his cure. After you have drenched him inwardly and cured the swelling of his legs, if he looks gaunt, and hath no stomach to his meat, if he be sick and weakly, give him white-wine and honey, the cordial mentioned in the foregoing receipt, to bring him



to his stomach:—then, and not before, give the purge of aloes. If your horse be gaunt, and girt up in his body, if he be in heat and will eat his meat, give the purge first, and then your white-wine and honey, and cordials.

*- All proved.*

*To make a horse piss free.*

Take half a pint of white-wine, an ounce of ivy-berries beaten to powder, let it steep in the wine all night, and give it to the horse in the morning fasting: do not heat it all, ride him after it a mile or two, then tie him up to the rack for two or three hours after it. This is very good for the wind cholic, and to make a horse piss freely; do it every morning till you see him piss free, it will cleanse the kidneys, and is good for the stone and gravel. These berries must be gathered when they grow black, about Shrovetide. It is good for a christian. You may put a handful of nettle-seed to the berries and wine. *Proved.*

*To cure the rives under the roots of the ears.*

First let blood on both sides of the neck, then clap a pair of barnacles upon his nose, and take a red-hot iron with the edge as thick as the back of your knife, and with it make a streak from the roots of the ears upon the middle of the swelling, downwards to the lowest part of the swelling; three streaks from the long one: burn it till the skin be yellow, and then sear it no more; when it is

thus seared, anoint the swelling with a little butter or hog's grease once or twice, if you sear him deep, anoint him oftener.

*Proved.*

*For the squinsey or strangling, or cold that breaks out at the nose, and hath run a long time.*

The squinsey breeds the canker in the mouth, and at the roots of the tongue: at the time the horse hath in his weisen-pipe and stomach a great quantity of tough thick phlegm, and when he cougheth much it will come up in his mouth, and he will swallow it again: his breath will be very hot and his mouth very red: if he has a canker in his throat, or at the root of his tongue, you may discover it by his hot stinking breath. To cure the canker you have a former receipt. To cure the strangling or cold that runs at the nose, or to cure the squinsey, take the following ingredients: anniseeds and turmeric, an ounce each beaten to powder, half a quarter of brandy or aqua vitæ, six spoonsful of white-wine or vinegar, a pint and a half of strong beer: heat them blood-warm, and give them fasting; run the point of the cornet-horn into the third furrow of the roof of his mouth, and let him bleed, then walk him a mile and set him up. Clothe him and litter him warm: let him stand upon the bit four or five hours, he will sweat with his drink very much: if

he be sick and inclined to lie down, you may suffer him to do so. Give him no mashes but warm water to drink with a handful of wheat-bran in it, and the same the next morning, and immediately after give him two ounces of honey and half a pint of white-wine, or wine-vinegar: walk him a mile after. The third morning after the drink in the beginning of this receipt, give him this cordial; three pints of stale beer, a piece of household bread crumbled in it, and a quarter of a pound of butter: give them warm to the beast.

*For the staggers.*

The signs are dimness of sight and reeling and staggering to and fro, thrusting his head against the wall and forsaking his meat. Take a long straight stick, about as thick as a pipe's stem, smoothe it well and cut a notch at one end, then run it up to the top of his head, job a little hard, turn the stick and draw it out, and he will bleed freely. It is bad to cord him about the neck in this disease; when he hath bled well in the head give him this drink: an ounce of anniseed, an ounce of turmeric, beaten small, half a gill of aqua vitæ, a pint and a half of mild beer, a pint of verjuice, or else a gill of wine vinegar, heat them lukewarm, and give them to the beast in the morning before he drinks. As soon as you have given it, take a handful of rue, beat it small in a mortar, and a little aqua vitæ; put

half the aqua vitæ into one ear, holding it upright in the hollow of your hand, and put half the rue after it, and wool or tow to keep it in; tie up the ear with a woollen list or garter, and do the same with the other ear, tie up his ears with your list together, and at twenty-four hours end untie them, and take out the wool and rue: next morning let him blood on both sides of the neck, save a pint of it, mix it with a handful of salt, and give it to the horse fasting: four or five hours after give him sweet hay, and at night warm water and bran: after you have given him the first drink, tie up one of his fore-legs, strew good store of litter under him, and he will lie down and take his rest, and come to in a day or two, or else be soon dead: the vinegar will make him piss, and the aqua vitæ will make him sleep: if he comes not to his stomach, give him honey and white-wine, and the cordial, as you are directed in the receipt for a dry surfeit. After any sickness, give him bran and peas, or bran and beans, when able to eat: when you let blood in the head with your cornet-horn, let blood in the third furrow of his mouth, and let him bleed well; and let him blood in the gristle of his nose, with a long bodkin or awl. *Proved.*

*For a cold newly taken.*

Take half an ounce of diapente, two spoonsful of sallad-oil, and a little treacle, put them

into a pint and a half of strong beer and give it to the beast lukewarm fasting : give him warm water for two days, and a mash of ground malt and keep him in warm the time of the cure. *Proved.*

*For an old cold which causeth the horse to run at one or both nostrils, even for a year, and is knotted with kernels under his throat, between his jaws...*

Take an ounce of turmeric, an ounce of anniseeds, beat them small, an ounce of lignum vitæ, a gill of aqua vitæ, a gill of white-wine vinegar, a handful of unset leeks beaten small in a mortar, put them all together with a pint and a half of strong beer ; give them to the beast fasting lukewarm and tie him up to the rack six or seven hours, and litter sweet and clothe him up warm : at the end of that time give him a little hay, and at night give him some warm water and bran ; next morning give him the same, and presently after give him two ounces of honey and half a pint of white-wine lukewarm ; ride him three or four miles after it ; clothe and litter him warm when he comes in, boil half a peck of oats with two ounces of fœnugreek and two ounces of coriander seeds, mash them together and give them to him : the third morning give him a cordial made of three pints of stale beer, a gill of honey, a lump of butter and a good piece of household bread ; put in the



honey and the butter after the bread and beer is boiled together, and give them fasting, lukewarm; the fourth morning give him this drink, one ounce of polypodium, one ounce of bay-berries, an ounce of long-pepper, an ounce of sugar-candy, beat them all small and put them into a quart of strong beer, heat it lukewarm, ride him a mile, and then give it to him; ride him two or three miles after it, clothe and litter him up warm: after he hath fasted for four or five hours, give him soaked oats, with two ounces of fœnugreek, and two ounces of coriander, if you have no coriander, take two ounces of carraway seeds, and give him that night of the oats and carraway seeds, and put the water they were boiled in along with some cold water, and give it to the horse to drink, and no other. When you have rested him a week, then give him the first drink mentioned in this receipt, and follow on as you are directed every day; in the third week give him the same things again, and in the same manner, and at the same distance of days as you did the first week, and in three or four weeks it will be cured.—The first drink doth loosen the filth and open the lights, and set them a running. The cordial, white-wine, and honey, will keep him to his stomach, help him to void filth at the nose and mouth, and much nourish him within; they cleanse the stomach, breast and bowels, do much waste the squinsey in the throat; and cut the

thick phlegm. If you follow these directions and air him moderately once or twice a day, the horse will soon be sound. The drink of polypodium, long-pepper, and bay-berries, is a purger of the veins, blood, and liver, and will stay the wasting of the body. The morning you give him the first drink, apply the charge of soap and brandy, made in a salve, to the kernels between his jaws, and in a week's time it will be fallen flat and not break: lay the charge on scalding hot, and heat it well in. If you see the yellow matter become white, there will be the greater hopes of the speediness of the cure. *Proved.*

*For a canker in the mouth.*

He will slaver at the mouth, and the roots of his tongue will be eaten with the canker, the sides of his mouth will be hot, raw, and yellow. If the canker have eaten any holes in his mouth, and caused many sores, take half a gallon of running water, a handful of red sage, a dozen sprigs of rosemary, a handful of unset hysop, a quarter of a pound of rochallum, and if it be in summer, add five or six walnut leaves: put them into a kettle and let them boil till they be half consumed, then put them into an earthen pan, and let them stand till they be cold; you need not take out the herbs, but when you use it, take ten or twelve spoonsful, pull out his tongue, dip a linen cloth, tied to a stick, into the liquor, and wash

his mouth and throat all over; then pull out his tongue again, and throw a handful of salt into his mouth; presently after dip another stick's end tied with a rag into tar, and put it all over his mouth where the sores are, and once in three days give him a cordial, and white-wine and honey, as before, and the same quantity: ride him or work him upon it. This water, salt, tar, white-wine, and honey, and cordials, will bring the horse to a stomach, cleanse his stomach, and loosen his body: it will take away the heat of his stomach, and cut through the thick phlegm: it will cure the canker in a very short time, except his tongue and mouth be very much eaten. You need not wash his mouth afterwards with the water and tar, for the wine and honey, and the cordials will heal it. Let the hay and provender you give him be clean and moist, and give him no chaff.

*Proved.*

*To cure a foul, rank, pocky farcion, which runs all over a horse, or in any particular part of his body.*

If a horse hath the farcion, and his breath smells strong, and stinks, do not meddle with him, for his lights are rotten, and there is no cure for him, for he is as full of them within as without: if his breath be sweet, there is no doubt of the cure. For all knotted, budded farcions separate the sound from the sick,

for this disease is infectious; they will take it one of another. This disease cometh first of colds and surfeit. Give him a little hay at night to keep his jaws from falling, the next morning let him bleed on both sides of the neck, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink: one ounce of aristolochia, an ounce of tumeric, an ounce of anniseeds, beat your turmeric and anniseed small, and grate the root of aristolochia, and put them all together with one handful or two of lung-worth or liver-worth, and rue, a handful of red sage, a handful of green or dry wormwood, a handful of green fennel, if not to be had, take two ounces of fennel-seed: cut the herbs small, pound the seeds, and put them all to steep in three pints of water, and let them lie all night; next morning before you give it him, ride him a mile till he be warm, then give him it cold as it stood all night, and ride him a mile gently, set him up warm clothed and littered; let him stand upon the bit seven or eight hours, then unbit him, and give him a little clean hay, and at night warm water with some wheat bran in it: the next morning ride him to the river and let him drink, and let him drink but once a day, but ride him well upon his watering, and at the end of three days, give him his former drink again, and order him as before: work him moderately the time of his cure. Be it in winter or summer, keep him in the house with dry

meat: when cured, you may turn him out or keep him in: when he is cold, wash him twice a day up to the back, soak him well in the river, and at three or four days distance, if you see need requires, give him two or three drinks more, ordering him as before. As soon as you have given him the first drink, with the end of your cornet-horn, let him blood in the furrow in the top of his mouth. These drinks will make him run at the nose much white or yellow matter, and they will make him spew much filth, and will purge and dry up all the gross humours in his body, and cleanse the blood. After these drinks, you shall see the farcions appear with red heads, and they will drop out of themselves, and where you see them ready to drop out, apply this medicine; take half a pound of roch-allum, melt it in the fire, take it out and beat it to powder, and mix as much as you think will do with your fasting spittle, till it be like an ointment, and where you see they are ready to drop out, lay a little of this upon the head of the bud, but where you see they are hard in the flesh, let it alone, for some will die and the rest will droop out of themselves: ride him up and down in the river twice a day, as far as the swelling goes, a good while after the allum and spittle have taken place: these drinks will kill and dry up any pocky gangrene farcion, even if it spreads all over him.

*Proved.*



*For a farcy in the head.*

If it be in the head and no where else, then bleed him in both the neck-veins in the morning before he hath drunk; then give him the drinks for a pocky farcy, and no other, let him bleed with your cornet-horn, in the third furrow of the roof of his mouth, and tie him up to the rack for five or six hours; then give him a little clean hay, and at night some warm water and bran. If it be in his head and no where else, and some certain small buds do appear, then do nothing but bleed him in the neck-veins and give him the drink, and bleed him in the palate of the mouth, and at the very same time apply the charge of soap and brandy hot, and heat it well in; lay it not upon the heads of the buds, but all over the swelling, and in a short time, with the drink using, the farcy will die and the swelling will fall. *Proved.*

*For a swelling in the fore or after legs.*

If the beast has a great surfeit that falls down into his legs, if you think it will come to a farcy, and you see it grows very hard, or two or three buds appear, you shall prevent it by giving him two or three drinks for the pocky farcion, at three days distance between each drink, and by charging the swelled legs with soap and brandy, if it be not broken before. If you fear a farcy, or see a few buds, ride him three or four days after the soap and

brandy is laid on, into the river for eight minutes at a time, twice a day. *Proved.*

*For a swelling in the brisket below the chest.*

If it be a surfeit that swells in the brisket, or in any other part of the beast, if you think it will come to a farcy and you see two or three buds to appear, then give him two or three drinks for the pocky farcion, at three days distance between each drink; let the swelling be broke or not, lay the charge of soap and brandy hot, above the buds, and heat it well in; after the buds appear, lay the allum and spittle upon it. *Proved.*

*For a swelling by a blow upon the chest, or elsewhere.*

If it comes by a blow, be it where it will, or hot or cold, so that it be not broke, lay nothing to it but the charge of soap and brandy, and heat it well in, and in four or five days it will either sink or break it: if it breaks, see for directions in this book.

*For a farcy that is broken out in the legs.*

Do not charge it except it swells above those buds up to the body-wards, in such case lay on the charge of soap and brandy all over the swelling, above the buds, to stop it from running higher, but not upon the buds below; let blood in the neck-veins, and in the third furrow of the roof of the mouth, and then give him one or two of the pocky farcion

drinks, at three days distance, till you see all the swelling killed and dried up with the charge of soap and brandy, and the drinks. Upon those buds that are broken lay the allum and fasting spittle, and they will dry and heal up: for those that are in the flesh, some will die in the flesh, and some will drop out.

*Proved.*

*For a water farcy.*

The signs to know it from the pocky-farcy are as follows: He will swell in bags as big as your head, mostly under the belly, and sometimes about the chaps, and under his jaws. Take a nail-rod, bend it at the end, the length of a fleam, so that it may a very little more than go through the skin: at the end made it red-hot, and make a number of holes all over the swelling with it, the yellow water will run out, and the swelling suddenly fall away; to qualify the heat of the iron rub a little soap upon it, and give him but one drink, such as you give for the pocky farcion. The more you work any farcy horse, the sooner the cure. If he be poisoned by any medicine, your often riding him into cold water will destroy the working of it. Give him warm water to drink, and let him stay at home the time of the cure. You may work any farcied horse with another, but let them not stand nor feed together; to make all sure, give the sound horse one or two drinks

as if for a pocky farcied horse, and the drinks will prevent a farcy of the sound horse.

*Proved.*

*For a button farcy.*

You shall know it by these signs:—The horse will be full of bunches and knots, as big as peas or nuts, they are in bubbles in the skin, and are easy to be seen. First let blood on both sides the neck, and let him bleed well, then take a little houseleek, beat it and strain it through a fine linen cloth, and put into his ears; then take an ounce of aristolochia, and grate it small, a handful of the tops of rue, the size of an egg of hog's grease, beat these three last together till they be like a salve: as soon as you have put the houseleek into each ear, divide the others into two equal parts, put a part into each ear, and some wool after it to keep it in, then stitch his ears with a needle and thread, and tie a list hard about his ears, that he may not shake it out, then tie the list of both ears together a little strait, and cut a small hole in his forehead, and raise the skin from his forehead the breadth of your hand round about the hole, then take a red dock root, slice it and put three slices into the hole, they will draw a deal of corruption out of it which will scald the hair off, and when the strength of the root is gone, it will drop out of itself; then anoint it with a little fresh butter. After you put in the root, lay a

plaster of burgundy-pitch over it to keep out the wind and cold; let him fast seven or eight hours, and let him stand upon the bit; you shall see him slaver, champ and foam, as if he was ridden: give him warm water and bran at night, and let his ears be shut up for two days. The knots and bunches will fall in a short time, and the hair will come again upon his forehead.

*To cure the cords, which is when a horse can neither lift up his head to the rack nor put it to the ground.*

The cause of this disease is extreme cold which lodgeth in the stomach and causeth the cords to shrink quite up so that the beast can neither lift his head up nor down, but only eat meat out of a crib: in this case a horse is afraid to lie down, and when down he cannot rise. First make this drink, half an ounce of diapente, an ounce of anniseeds beaten small, a little saffron dried on a paper and rubbed small, two ounces of honey, two ounces of fresh butter, a pint and a half of strong beer, a gill of white-wine vinegar; put all these together on the fire till the butter and the honey be melted, and give it to the beast lukewarm, fasting: then walk or ride him till he be warm, and set him up and tie him upon the bit for five or six hours. clothe and litter him up warm, after it give him a little hay and then a mash, and no warm water that



night except the water in his mash ; next morning give him another mash, and about nine or ten o'clock give him warm water and bran, and thus keep him for four or five days : look where the sign is, if it be in his head or stomach, do not cut him, it does not do so well. In cutting, observe that you must cut him at the very bottom of the breast, you will see the vein, and under the vein lies the great sinew, as big as a pipe's stem, just by the inside to the top of his leg ; when you see where the vein lies draw the skin aside which lies over the vein, and cut that part of the skin an inch or more, which may just fall upon the vein again ; this being cut, with the point of your cornet-horn make a little way, and you shall see a blue film over the vein, chafe it a little till you see the vein, with the point of your cornet-horn, then draw the vein aside with one hand, and put your cornet-horn's end under the sinew, and raise the sinew up above the skin with your cornet-horn, and cut it quite asunder ; let it go, and put a little butter and salt into the wound, and afterwards heal it up with some of the aforementioned healing salves : walk him an hour at a time, twice a day for a week together. If with the first drink the cold breaks at his nostrils, then give him the same drink again, at three or four days distance between each drink, and order him as you are directed at the beginning of this receipt. If necessary

give him a third drink. It is extreme cold that shuts the cords: this drink will break the cold, and in a short time the beast will do well. *Proved.*

*For a stumbling horse.*

Tie him up close to a post that stands in a window, take your knife and cut a hole lengthway down to his lips, endwards, in the midst of his nose, between his nostrils, the length of your thumb: when you have cut through the skin, then do off the red film with your cornet-horn's point, and you will see a white flat sinew; put the point of your cornet-horn under it, and raise it above the skin, then pull it hard out with your cornet-horn and turn your cornet-horn about, then pull it the second time, and turn your horn again, and so the third time: in this doing you will see him bring his hinder legs to his fore-legs. When you have thus pulled and turned the sinew two or three time, about the cornet-horn, cut the sinew under the cornet-horn, to the lip's end, but cut it not upon the cornet-horn, nor about it: when you have cut it let it go, and put a little butter and salt into the wound, then over it lay a plaster of burgundy-pitch, to keep out the wind, and the horse will go well, and never stumble afterwards. *Proved.*

*How to make diapente.*

Take a quarter of a pound of Aristolochia, a quarter of a pound of myrrh, half a pound

of bay-berries, the outward husk peeled off, two ounces of white ivory, two ounces of hartshorn, (the round root of aristolochia is the best,) cut the outward rind and grate it small, do not dry it, but after you have grated it, beat it small by itself, or with the other things, in a mortar, then put them into a fine sieve and searse the finest out; then put the biggest in a mortar again, and beat it very small, then searse the finest from that, and do so till you have made all very fine, then put it into a bladder, and keep it for your use. You may give an ounce of this at a time, although you give other things with it. An ounce of diapente is a good drink in a pint of strong beer, for a new taken cold. *Proved.*

*How to make a horse-spice.*

Take a quarter of a pound of anniseeds, a quarter of a pound of English liquorice, a quarter of a pound of grains, a quarter of a pound of fennel-seed, a quarter of a pound of flour of brimstone: slice the liquorice and dry it, and beat them all together. You may add a half a pound of alicampagne, dried and beaten small in a mortar, with the rest of the things; you may either put all these together or keep them severally by themselves. An ounce of this horse-spice, with a spoonful of sallad-oil, and a spoonful of treacle-jean, is a good drink in a quart of strong beer: this drink is for a cold and to make a horse thrive, and prevent

diseases: if upon letting your horse blood, you wish to give him a drink, put an ounce of this spice in a pint of strong beer heated lukewarm, and give it in the morning fasting, let him stand in the house, and give him warm water to drink, and a mash. *Proved.*

*To cure a ring-bone.*

It always grows upon the instep, a little above the hoof on the after-leg, about the size of a walnut, in a long, hard, crusty substance. Take up the vein on the inside of the same leg where the ring-bone grows, then to make a certain cure, burn it with a hot iron, about the thickness of the back of a knife, upon the top of the ring-bone as far as the swelling goes, and with your hot iron make three streaks downwards, and three streaks across them, as you may see by this figure; burn it till it looks yellow, then take a horse-nail and drive it through a stick so that the point will come through long enough to go through the skin, and just make it bleed: strike the point of the nail just into the seared lines, in every side three or four holes, then take a handful of salt and rub it hard in with your hands; a quarter of an hour after, lay this charge to the ring-bone;—as much burgundy-pitch as a walnut, the same of black pitch, half an ounce of mastic, boil them all till they be melted, then spread it on hot with a flat



stick, and flock it on with sheerman's flocks, and daub them on close: this, before it comes off, will lay it as flat as can be: he must not be ridden for a fortnight, and must stand in the first night, and afterwards he may stand in or out so that it is on dry ground: this will be an absolute cure by once dressing.

*Proved.*

*For a spavin as big as an egg.*

It groweth upon the inside of the hough of the after-leg: first beat it with a blood-stick until it be soft; then anoint it with a little oil of origanum, upon the bone-spavin, which you bruised, anoint it no where else. Two days after the oil has taken its course, take two ounces of the oil of swallows and anoint the cord sinews in the bent of the leg, to reach and give liberty to the sinews that are shrunk: lay on half an ounce of the oil of swallows at a time, and lay it on no where but upon the sinews on the bent of the leg: after the oil of swallows is well soaked in, you may ride or work him; at three days distant you may lay on half an ounce more. If blood-bags come in the spavin place at the time the bone-spavin comes, then do not sear it with your iron by no means, only lay the charge of soap and brandy hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of iron, and it will cause it to fall.

*Proved.*



*To make a star in a horse's forehead.*

Cut away the hair close to the skin in such part as you wish the form of a star, then take a piece of a red brick, and rub it hard upon every place where you clipt away the hair, till it be at the very roots of the hair, then wipe it clean with a linen cloth: make a plaster of burgundy-pitch, spread it upon a piece of linen the exact form of the star itself; a little before you lay it on, lay a hot iron on on the pitch to soften it, that it may stick on the better; then clap it to the place as a plaster fit for the star, and lay a hot iron upon the back of the plaster to heat it, then over the first plaster lay another a little broader, heating the second as you did the first, and so let it stick on till it comes off itself, which may be a month; when these plasters come off, to make the hair come white in the place where you would have the star to be, take a little honey and butter, mix them together, and anoint the star once in two days, and do so for that distance of days four or five times, and in three months you will see the star. He may stand in the house or run abroad, and you may work or ride him.

*For the pain or scratches, or rotten cuts, putrified sinews, &c.*

Take a pail of fair water, wash his legs clean, and clip away the hair close to the skin as far as his legs are crannied, then wash

his leg again, and let him stand till they be dry; take half a pound of English honey, an ounce of ground pepper, ten heads of garlic, put them into a bowl and beat them together till they come to a salve. If the scratches be on both legs, divide the salve into two halves, lay them on two half sheets of grey paper, spread a broad piece of linen over the paper, and lay the plaster to the hinder part of his legs where the sores are, and sew it on fast, and close in the fet-lock, and so far up as his legs are scabby, and let it stay on two days: make a small thumb-band of hay, and wind it all over his leg and over the plaster: at two days end wipe the chaps of every cranny and crack in his heels, then lay on a plaster, and do every thing as before, at two days end lay on another fresh plaster, and let it remain three days, and when you take that off, if you see necessary, lay on a fourth plaster, and let it stay three days and more, and by thus dressing, it will dry quite up and be whole. Let him not go into water all the time of his cure. If one or two of the pocky-farcy drinks were given, it would much further the cure, and dry up those humours in the body which feed the scratches in the legs. *Proved.*

*For the strangullion in a horse.*

It much differeth from that when a horse cannot stale, and differeth from the disease called the Gripe or Fret in the Guts, which

will put a horse to abundance of pain, and make him to tumble and wallow : this disease called the strangullion, if a horse have it he will look gaunt and stand straining to piss, but cannot ; his bladder will be ready to burst with extreme fulness and heat of his water : for present remedy do thus ; take a pint of claret-wine and put it into an ounce of ivy-berries, and one ounce of parsely-seeds beaten small, and give it him at any time, once doing is enough. You may likewise see, for the gravel and stone, what is given to man, and you may give it him. *Proved.*

*For fretting or griping in a horse's belly.*

This disease will make the horse to tumble and wallow with all four feet upwards, with a griping wind in the guts : some horses are in such extreme pain, that they will swell as if they would burst, and will endanger the breaking of their bladder, and in this case they cannot dung. For remedy, take a quart of cold salt beef or pork brine, if you cannot get a quart, get a pint : put it into a horn and pour it down cold ; after this brine is down, anoint your hand and arm with sallad-oil and butter, and rake him, and pull out as much dung as you can, to give him all the ease you can, then take a good big onion, and peel off the outward rind, then cut it lengthways and cross-ways in many places, roll it up and down in a handful of salt, put it into a hollow pye

of butter, but before you put it into his fundament, anoint your hand and arm with butter and sallad-oil, and run up the onion thus rolled in the salt, and put into the butter, as soon as you can, and there leave it; then tie up his tail as close to his rump as you can: being tied with a cord, fasten the cord to his girths, that it may keep in the onion and butter, then lead him out and walk him, and in a quarter of an hour's time it will purge exceedingly. It will cleanse his maw and guts, and kill the worms: let his tail be tied but a little while, that he may purge freely; prick him in the mouth with your cornet-horn the first thing you do. The next morning give him a comfortable drink, made of an ounce of horse-spice, a quarter of a pint of white-wine vinegar, with a pint and a half of strong beer; put them together, and give it him lukewarm, fasting; give him bursten oats, or a mash for two days after it, and warm water the day you give him this drink. *Proved.*

*To kill botts or worms.*

'To know whether your horse be troubled with botts or stomach-worms, observe these signs; he will squitter and dung them, and of a sudden dung very small; in this case he will void small white worms of himself, he will be much knotted under his over-lip, the root of his tongue will be fiery and yellow, his breath hot, sweat much as he stands in the

stable, and will be very faint: now if you see him sweat in the stable, then know for certain that he is far gone, and is in great danger. For remedy, take turmeric and anniseeds, of each an ounce, one penny-worth of the flour of brimstone, half a quarter of a pint of brandy, or aqua vitæ; beat the anniseeds and turmeric small, and then put all together into a pint and a half of strong beer, except the brimstone, and that lay upon the top when you are ready to give him the horn into his mouth: give this drink fasting, and let him fast four or five hours after it, and stand upon the bit, give him to drink warm water at night, the next day cold water, ride him after it, this drink will work pretty strong. If he has not been lately bled before, let him blood in the neck-vein, and in the third furrow in the roof of his mouth, with the end of your cornet-horn. This drink at once giving will kill the botts, and take his faintness, cleanse and purge him of tough gross humours in his body, upon which the worms do breed. Culpepper saith, that box-tree leaves are excellent good to kill the botts in horses; they are hot, dry and binding; you may put in a handful of them into his drink, and try conclusions.

*Proved.*

*For a fever in a horse.*

The signs are, the horse will fall suddenly sick, and be very weak, he will go heavy and



sad as if he would tumble down, and be gaunt in his belly, fall from his meat, look weakly in his eyes, hang down his head and stand drooping: when this sickness first takes him, he will tremble and quake, as if he had an ague; in this disease take no blood from him by any means, it is death if you do. The remedy is, take half an ounce of diapente, one ounce of bay-berries, half an ounce of long-pepper, beat all of those together, then take half an ounce of diascordium, and put all these into a pint and a half of strong beer, lukewarm, and give it to your horse at any time of the day, for this disease is dangerous, and admits of no delay; clothe and litter him up very warm; the diascordium in the drink will cause him to lie down and sleep; after the drink hath done working, and the horse done sweating then give him half a pint of white-wine, and two ounces of honey, mix them together, and heat them lukewarm, and give it him in the stable; and after you come to air him, you may give it him abroad; three or four hours after, give him a cordial made of three pints of stale beer, a gill of honey, a quarter of a pound of butter, and a good piece of household bread, boil them a little together, and give it him lukewarm, and set him up for that night; give him water and bran at night; next morning fasting give him the cordial again, and at nine or ten o'clock, warm water and bran; at two or three o'clock, white-

wine and honey, and at night warm water and bran, afterward now and then a cordial, and white-wine and honey, and moderate airing will soon bring him to his stomach, when you see he is able to walk abroad, air him once or twice a day, it will do him much good. These cordials, wine and honey, and airing of him, will cause the beast to mend apace. After he comes to eat his meat pretty handsomely, take some blood from his spur-veins, and the frets from him; sweating will do him much good. If he lie down and sleep, it will bring him to his senses. If diascordium do not make him take sufficient rest, you may take as much poppy seeds as will lie upon a sixpence, in a hornful of any beer; (if you cannot get poppy-seeds, which some call red-weed-seeds,) buy white poppy-water at the apothecary's, pour in each nostril a spoonful, it will make him sleep heartily.

*For a dry inward mange.*

The signs are these: His hair will come off by plats, and sometimes from head to tail, and there will be a dry scruffy mange remaining, it is an extreme heat of the blood which causes the hair to scale off, and causeth the dry mange in his body. If his body be dried up and wasted that the horse be miserably lean and overcome with it, then give him this one drink and no more, not else, viz. One ounce of the flour of brimstone, two ounces

of rosin, one ounce of turmeric, one ounce of anniseeds, all beaten small: put these, except the brimstone, in a quart of strong beer lukewarm, and give it him fasting, and put the brimstone at the mouth of the horn, tie him up to to the rack for four or five hours; then give him warm water and bran, at night bursten oats: the next day after, give him in his provender, two spoonsful of rosin beaten to powder, at night, and the next day the like, and then no more; this is to cleanse and purge away the mangy surfeit that is in his body, which causeth the outward mange: also two or three days after his drink, scrape off the scabs and scruff clean with the back of a knife, till the blood and water appears. Then mix an equal proportion of oil of turpentine and beer, shake them well together in a glass vial, and anoint the horse all over but once, and it is an absolute cure. It will smart terribly; tie him close for an hour, till it has taken its course. It is a gallant receipt. If the horse be not much pined and shrunk of his flesh do nothing but anoint him once outwardly, and give him this drink. The oil of turpentine and beer will kill the mange of a beast, dog, bullock, &c., with once dressing.

*Proved.*

*To stop bleeding at the nose, or in the mouth, where the fleam or knife hath cut a great gash: Or when you have cut the vein in a Quitter-bone, and it bleeds that you know not how to stop it.*

For any of those, take a chafingdish of hot coals, and burn three or four linen rags upon them, laying them one upon another, and let the horse's mouth be over the smoke all the while as the blood runs out of the horse's nose, quench and blow them up with your breath again, till the rags are burned as black as a coal, take and put them up into each nostril a hand high; then hold up his head, and pour three or four quarts of strong beer down his throat, to wash down the smoke and clotted blood which lies in his throat. If he snort the burnt rags out, have others in readiness to put up his nostrils: remember, as well when you fume him, as when you stop his nostrils with burnt rags, to be often pouring down his throat cold beer, because the blood returning a contrary way will choke him: this method will stop bleeding at the nose of a man. If a horse's mouth be cut with a fleam at any time when you let blood in the mouth, and the fleam glance and cut a gash, take some of these burnt rags and lay them as hot into the wound as you can, and afterwards take another clean rag and lay it over the wound to keep in the burnt rags, and tie on each side his teeth a small string over-

thwart to keep it close for twenty-four hours; at the end of which time you may take off the cloth, but let the burnt rags lie in the wound as long as you please, for they will draw and heal mightily; when they come out you may put in more, and do as you did before: and so for a quitter-bone; if you cut it till all the veins bleed, then take of these hot burnt rags and fill the hole full, they will stop the blood in a very short time; and let it lie there for twenty-four hours, and they will draw it as white as can be, so that you may see what to do afterwards: this will stop the blood in any wound. *Proved.*

*For a cold new or old, or a cough wet or dry.*

Take one handful of rue, chop or stamp it very small, and put to it some anniseeds beaten very fine: make it up in pills with sweet butter, and give it to your horse in a pint and a half of ale or beer fasting: ride him upon it, and let him fast four or five hours after it: do this every third morning till you see his cough quite gone. This hath been found to be most sovereign for a horse that hath cold, whether newly or formerly taken: or for a wet or dry cough; it is also most excellent for a horse that hath been over-ridden, or any ways wronged by labour. *Proved.*

*For a young horse that hath taken a new cold.*

Take water and salt as much as will suffice, brew them well together, make it blood warm,



and give it him, and treat him after as is necessary. This I find to be singularly good to be given to a young horse that hath newly taken cold. *Proved.*

*For a new taken cold, with a coughing.*

Take bay-berries, anniseeds, and liquorice, of each half a penny-worth, of brown sugar-candy one pennyworth: make all these into powder, and sew them up in a fine linen rag, and so tie it to the bit or snaffle of the bridle, and ride a journey or travel him. *Proved.*

*For the botts.*

Take soap, and flour of brimstone, of each as big as a walnut, and a little garlic bruised; put these into a pint and a half of new strong beer, or sweet wort; steep it all night, and give it the beast next morning fasting, and tie him up to the rack three or four hours after; then give him warm water and what meat you please. *Proved.*

*For a blood-spavin.*

Take a strong halter, and put the noose or head-stall about his neck close to his shoulders, then take the other end of the halter, and take the contrary after foot from the ground, which the blood spavin is not upon, and put the other end of the halter about his pastern, and draw it with the halter from the ground, and tie it to the head-stall of the halter, that he may not set down; by doing thus, you

may take up the vein and sear him as he stands, but the best way will be to cast him, and to tie his other three legs, and let that be at liberty; then before you take up the vein, half a foot above the spavin-place, in the small of the ham in the inside of his leg, you must first draw the skin across with your fingers on one side of the vein, then cut a hole in the skin an inch and a half long down his leg thus, | in that part of the skin which will lie right | over the vein; then let the cut go and the | skin will lie over the vein; then with the | point of your cornet horn, lengthways as the wound is cut, chafe and fret the thin skin or film to pieces, that you may see the vein blue; then with the point of your cornet-horn, by degrees, run it between the vein and the skin, and raise the vein above the skin, and after that put two short shoemaker's ends between the vein and the flesh, a little distance one from the other; to tie or take up the vein after it hath done bleeding, then, and not before, with a point of a penknife, slit a little hole lengthways, and not across the vein, open the vein as it lies upon the horn, and when it hath bled enough, tie the ends that you before put under it above the slit, and the other end below the slit of the vein pretty hard, and leave the end hanging an inch long without the skin to keep the hole open, that the matter may come out at it, and that the skin may not heal up before the wax threads

have eaten the vein to pieces, which will be within a week : when you have tied up the vein, put into the wound a little piece of butter and salt mixed together, to heal it up : after all this, before you let down his leg, take a nail rod and make it with a thick edge, bending or hooked back ; heat it hot, and make, in the bent of the leg, with it one long streak downwards, sear it beside the sinews till the skin look yellow, but not upon the sinews, and thus you must sear him on the inside and outside of the knee, where you see the swelling appear ; likewise with one line and two crosses, cross it : then apply this charge ; a gill of brandy, or, for want thereof, a gill of aqua vitæ, and a penny-worth of crown-soap ; boil them together till they come to a white salve, and lay it all over the swelling as hot as you can, with a flat stick, and heat it well in with a bar of iron : once laying on this charge is enough ; when it hath laid on a week, ride him, whether he halt or not, so you ride him moderately : then take an ounce of the oil of swallows, and rub it well in with your hand upon the sinews of the bent of the leg, to reach and give liberty to them ; use of this oil every four or five days, and in four or five times dressing it will be a cure. After he comes from work or riding at any time, and his legs be washed and dry, rub the oil upon the bent of his leg, and upon the sinews well in with the palm of your

hand, and within a fortnight's time the blood-spavin will not be seen, and the swelling will be quite gone: if you take a blood-spavin, at the first coming out of a young horse, fire it but lightly, and lay the former charge to it, and in once dressing it will be a complete cure. *Proved.*

*For an old cold.*

If you see cause, take blood from the neck-vein, otherwise not; instead of oats, give him wheat-bran boiled in water after this manner, viz., set a kettle over the fire almost full of water, and when it begins to boil, put in your bran, and let it boil a full quarter of an hour, then take it off, and let it stand till it be almost cold, and about four five o'clock in the morning give it him as hot as he can eat it, and for this drink give him the same water, and at night give him oats and white-water to drink, and let him be covered and littered up warm. If it be in summer, let not the stable be too hot, for it will take away his stomach, and make him faint; and when you give him his water at night, always give him as much of this powder as an egg-shell will hold, amongst his oats, to which you must keep him eight days together, or longer if you shall see cause; the boiled bran drieth up all his corrupt and gross humours, which is the cause of his cold: the powder is this, viz., take of cumminseeds, fœnugreek, filerus

montani, or sisilers, nutmegs, cloves, ginger, linseed, of each two ounces, Quick-brimstone six ounces, make these into fine powder, and mix them well together; it must be given in his oats the quantity that was prescribed before; but he must first be watered with white-wine; presently after let him be well rubbed all over, and clothed and littered warm; and an hour before you give him his oats, put in his rack a little sweet wheat-straw, and let him eat thereof an hour or better, and then, and not before, give him oats mixed with the powder; which having eaten, give him hay at your pleasure, and with doing thus, his cold will be gone in a short time, and still sooner, if you air him an hour before sunset, and an hour after sun-rising, if the sun shine, mark that; keep up his stomach with white-wine and honey, and the cordials. But if this cold bring with it a violent cough, as it is often seen, then use the receipt following.

*Proved.*

*For a cold with a violent cough.*

Give him the wheat-bran boiled, together with the powder, with his oats, but not above three or four days, or till you see he hath purged sufficiently; keep him notwithstanding to his white-water, which is no other than water made hot in a kettle, and then put in some wheat-bran, or barley-meal; let him eat the bran as hot as he will, and drink the water



a little warm: but always, an hour before you water him, take a stick and wrap a linen cloth about it four or five times, first dipped in oil of bays, and put it into his mouth, and with a leather thong or cord, fasten it to either end of the stick, over his ears like the head-stall of a bridle, as smiths do when they burn a horse for a lampra's; let him drink with this stick in his mouth, and stand with it an hour after at the least, that he may lick and suck up the oil; and after three or four days are expired, and that you see he hath purged sufficiently, give him the oats, amongst the following powder, viz. fennel-seeds four ounces, fœnugreek two ounces, cardamum one ounce; beat them but a little, or else he will blow them away when he eats his oats; put one spoonful into his oats, and keep him warm, and use him as is prescribed in the foregoing receipt, and you will find it to do him much good. *Proved.*

*A rare receipt to cause a horse to vomit.*

Take two great roots of polypodium of the oak, wash and scrape it very clean, and tie it to his snaffle; then let it be steeped in oil of spike a whole night, and in the morning fasting put on his bridle with the roots fast to it, and ride him softly an hour or better, and if he be troubled with any rheumatic or phlegmatic humour, or cold, which may clog or anoy his stomach, it will cause him to vent

or vomit it up at his mouth or nose, and cause him to cough, sneeze and send forth a great quantity of filth and slimy matter, and in a short time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood and exhaust all the waterish humours in such sort, as by temperate ordering and doing as here prescribed, you may keep him a long time sound. You may give it to a horse newly taken from grass, or to any horse that hath taken a cold.—You may give him white-wine and honey, and the cordial formerly mentioned. *Proved.*

*For a curb.*

It always grows upon the back part of the heel of the knee of the hinder leg, in a hard substance. Tie up the contrary leg, as if for a blood-spavin, and then with a hot iron sear it lengthways down his leg upon the curb, till the skin looks yellow, then draw your iron across it, in two or three places, as you did for a blood-spavin: then take a horse nail, drive it through a stick a little way, set the point of the nail to the fired places, and strike it ten or twenty times in several places, according as the burning goes: then take a handful or two of salt, and rub it well in with your hand to stop the blood, and half an hour after wipe the salt and apply the charge of soap and brandy on hot, and heat it in well with a bar of iron, and as your iron cools,

flake it over it to dry it in the better : let the charge lie on till it comes off of itself.—You may ride him every day, after three or four days, in the mean time let him stand in the stable. *Proved.*

*For a quitter-bone, old or new.*

It always grows just above the top of the hoof, on the hinder foot, and sometimes on the instep just above the hoof, on the side of the foot: but be it in any place, cure it thus; take up the vein in the small of the leg, on the side the quitter-bone lies: this is the way to further the cure, and make all sure by taking up the vein which feeds it. You may see how to take up a vein in the receipt for a blood-spavin. After you have taken up the vein, let it bleed well, and put into the wound some butter and salt, then with a little tow, or linen cloth, wound about your instrument's end, search the quitter-bone to the bottom, and where you see the matter come out, put your instrument in: when you have searched the wound, and made it clean, put into it a piece of white arsenic as big as a small bean, and a little tow upon it, and lay a little tow upon the top of the quitter-bone, with a linen cloth over it, and a woollen cloth over all: then tie him up to the rack with a strong halter till the anguish of the arsenic be over, for fear he come at it with his mouth; let the arsenic lie in for forty hours, then take out

the tow, and you shall see the hole in the quitter-bone look black and swelled more than it was before, it is the effects of arsenic, therefore you need not fear, but as soon as you have pulled off the cloth and tow, you may put his foot into a pail of cold water for a quarter of an hour, and let it soak, or if a river be near, leap him into it, so that no sand or dirt get into the wound, and let him stand and soak his leg there for a quarter of an hour; for his leg must be soaked once a day, for a week together: take off his wet hard cloths, and tie on dry ones; this is all you have to do till you see the core of the quitter-bone come out, then make this medicine to heal it.—Take a little good honey, put it into a pipkin, and when hot put in a little verdigrease, and three or four spoonsful of white-wine vinegar boil them together for half an hour, then take them off the fire, and when it is cold dip a little tow into it, and put it in the wound, and lay a little dry tow over that, and a linen cloth over the whole, and bind them on with a string, and so dress it once a day till you see it begins to heal; then dress it but once in two days, and as you see it heal, dress it the seldomer till it be whole. There will be a little bare space where no hair will come: put in arsenic but once, and although you tie him up to the rack that his mouth does not come to the arsenic, yet give him meat for all. Do but remember those two last cautions, and

you need not fear the cure, for it will be speedy. If you meet with a quitter-bone that hath been long in other farriers' hands, so corroded and poisoned that it is much swelled about the pastern and leg, you must first take up the vein on that side of the leg that the quitter-bone grows on, to keep the humours back that feeds it, then put in as much arsenic as a bean, as you were before directed, and when the core is out, heal it with the same salve and do every thing as before directed: but if there grows proud flesh in it whilst you are healing it, then scald it with butter and salt, and that will keep the proud flesh down. An old hurt in the foot may come to be a quitter-bone, and break out above the hoof, but a quitter-bone will never break out in the sole of the foot. Except you take up the vein, it is a very hard thing to cure. After the core is out it will not be amiss, before you go about to heal it, to wash it with white-wine vinegar, and then apply the healing salve mentioned in the foregoing receipt.

*Proved.*

*A preparation before you give the black drink for the glanders, in the next following receipt.*

First take blood from him, if you find him gross and phlegmatic, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend; then instead of oats give him every morning about five o'clock wheat bran, prepared for four or five days together, and



the water to drink that the bran is soaked in, which is to qualify and dry up the moist and bad humours abounding in him; and let him blood in the neck-veins. The next day rake him with your hand, and give him this glister:—Make a decoction of mallows, a pint and a half, and put into it four ounces of fresh butter, and a gill of sallad-oil; give him it blood warm, then fasten a strap of leather to his tail, draw it between his legs, and fasten the other end to his sursingle so strait that the tail may lay close to his tewel or fundament, that he may not purge till it be loose: when done, mount his back and ride him an easy trot or foot-pace, for half an hour, then set him up clothed and littered, with the bit in his mouth, three hours, during which time he will purge freely: then give him white water and hay, and at night a little oats, for he must be kept to a spare diet: the next day mix together the powder of brimstone and fresh butter, and anoint all along two goose feathers, and run a thread through each of their quills that you may fasten the thread to the top of the head-stall of his bridle, and run them up as high as you can into each nostril, and so ride him an hour or two, this will purge his head and lungs, and cause him to send forth much filthy matter; but when you set him up, take them out, and give him hay and white water, and bran prepared, as mentioned in the beginning of this receipt: the

next day give him the glisten again, and let him rest for that day; order in all things as before; the next day but use the goose-feathers again, and order him as before. All this is but to prepare him for the drink following, but you must observe to keep him always warm, and let him be always fasting and empty before you give him any physic, and air him evenings and mornings if the sun shines, or if the weather be warm or calm. Three days after, give him the drink following, which is called the black drink.

*The black drink for the glanders.*

Take new made urine, and strongest white-wine vinegar, of each half a pint, make two or three spoonsful of mustard-seed into mustard, with vinegar, and mix it well; then put your vinegar and urine to the mustard and stir them well together: then take an equal quantity of tar and bay-salt as much as may suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey as much as two or three egg-shells will hold—— Having prepared these things, keep him over night to a very spare diet, and the next morning ride him till he begins to sweat, then give him the egg-shells filled with tar and salt, as before prescribed, and as soon as he hath taken that, give him with a horn the aforesaid drink, made of fresh urine, vinegar, and mustard, all at the mouth, except two small hornsful which must be poured into his nostrils;

which when he hath taken, ride him again as much as you did before, set him up, and clothe and litter him warm, and so let him stand upon the bit till three or four o'clock; then unbit him and give him warm mash, and order him in all things as is usual for horses' taking physic. Give him this medicine or drink, every other day, if the horse be strong, and if he be weak in body, once in three or four days. This is an infallible cure in three or four times giving, if it be rightly given, though he be far spent. *Proved.*

*To cure the glanders running at the nose, and all colds and rheums.*

First observe this, when you give him oats put some honey to them, and rub them very well together between your hands: continue to do so until he stops running at the nose. This is one of the best and most certain cordials, for it disperses all the phlegm and choler, it also purgeth the head and brain, it purifieth the blood, it venteth evil humours, it causeth good digestion, and freeth a horse from glanders, colds, catarrhs, rheums, running at the nose, &c. *Proved.*

*For a fistula or gangrene in the foot, by a channel-nail long and deep in the foot, and breaks out above the hoof, or causeth the sole of the foot to come out, and the leg and pastern to swell very much.*

If this nail cause the sole of the foot to

come out, and break out above the hoof, and cause the pastern and leg to swell; but in case the sole of the foot be not come out, then take it out as you were directed formerly, by girting the fet-lock hard, and when you have taken out the sole of the foot, search the wound with a little tow at the instrument's end, to see how far and which way the channel-nail went; when you see where the holes are, drop in ten or twelve drops of the oil of turpentine, and take a little fine tow or lint at your instrument's end, dip it in the turpentine, and put it in tent-ways: then over this tent lay to the bottom of the hoof a handful of nettletops and a handful of salt, well beaten together, stuff his foot well with tow, and let it lie on twenty-four hours, and always when you dress it take off the shoe, and when dressed tack on the shoe again: dress it thus once a day with a tent dipt in turpentine, and laid to the sole first, and then the nettles and salt over it, till you see the sole come on a little, and when you see it a little grown, then apply the poultice following in this manner, but not before, and lay some tow over the poultice and over the tow a piece of leather, and over the leather splinters of wood, his shoe taken off and set on again, as you were shown in another place; let him stand dry in the house till he be whole, which will be in a few days: the poultice must lie on the first dressing twenty-four hours, the second dressing forty-eight hours, the third

dressing forty-eight hours, and so continue till the sole of the foot be grown firm and strong again. The poultice is thus made:—Take half a pint of salt beef or pork brine, and a quarter of a pound of kitchen-stuff grease, and boil them a pretty while together, put some wheat bran to it, and make it not too thick nor too thin: when you have taken out his sole, and untied the cord about the pastern, if it bleed much, then put a handful of salt into the bottom of the foot, with tow or flax between the sole of the foot and the shoe, and splinters and a piece of leather over it, to keep it in; at twenty-four hours take it off, and lay on the nettles as before directed, but not otherwise. Thus much for the cure of the sole of the foot: but mark what followeth, which belongeth to the foregoing receipt, which is, when the nail in the foot doth not only cause the sole of the foot to come out, but also breaketh out above the hoof, and causeth a gangrene or swelling in the pastern, and so up the leg; in this case, after you have searched it with a little tow or lint at your instrument's end, then drop into the hole a few drops of oil of turpentine, and after that put in a tent dipt in the oil of turpentine, as far as you can, and immediately apply the poultice laid upon a large linen cloth, to the swelling in the pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and bind it close on with another cloth that it may not come off: tie



him close up to the rack for seven or eight hours that he may not pull it off with his mouth; let it lie on for twenty-four hours, the first dressing, and for the other dressings, the time before mentioned, till the swelling be down and the sore be whole. Always put in a tent dipt in the oil of turpentine, before you lay this poultice to, or any other thing. If the hoof comes off, and it swells and breaks out above the hoof, if all these happen together, you must observe the distinct directions. The cure of that in the sole of the foot from that which breaks out above the hoof, and apply each cure to each disease. In this case the poultice must be first applied above the hoof, because when the sole of the foot is taken out, you must not lay the poultice to the place till it be a little grown; and further, with the great pain and continual holding up his foot from the ground, his sinews in the bent of his leg will be shrunk: to remedy which, use the oil of swallows as you may see for a blood-spavin, but if you cannot get the oil of swallows, if his sinews be knit or stiff, then rub in some trotters oil, which is made of sheep's feet, but for want of either of these, boil some hog's grease and aqua vitæ together, and rub it in cold with your hand. *Proved.*

*For a strain in the coffin-joint, or a sive-bone in the socket of the hoof.*

Take off the shoe, then pare the bottom of

the foot as thin as you can, till the blood almost appears; you shall know in what place the strain is, by taking the foot in your hand and wrying it to and fro from you: if it be there, he will shrink when you turn his foot: when you find where it is, make this poultice, and lay it on hot. Take a pint of strong beef, or pork brine, and a quarter of a pound of kitchen-stuff grease, put them into a skillet, and boil them together for half an hour, then put some wheat bran to it, and make a poultice of them, neither too thick nor too thin; then set on the shoe again, and put a good quantity of this poultice as hot as you can into the sole of the foot, then stuff the sole with tow or flax, and either splinter it with a flat stick or with a piece of sole-leather, to keep them in, and let them stay in for forty-eight hours; then take a long linen cloth and spread the rest of the poultice, scalding hot, all about the top of the hoof, the pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and let it lie on for forty-eight hours; at the end of which time take it off and lay on another, and let it stay on, and so likewise a third and fourth till you see him go sound, which will be in a very short time. If you have occasion to ride him, you may after the third dressing ride him moderately: a little before you set him up wash his legs, and when they are dry take off his shoe, and lay the poultice to as before.

This poultice is nothing differing from that in the receipt before. *Proved.*

*A purge for filthy slime, and to carry away the peccant humours which surfeits have engendered.*

Take a pint of white-wine, or a quart of new ale, as much of the best powder of mechoacan as you can take up with a shilling at four times; put them together, and give it lukewarm, ride him a mile or two gently and set him up warm, and let him stand upon the bit five or six hours, then give him a warm mash, and half an hour after give him oats and bran mixed together, a little at a time, and wet his hay that night: this will cause the slime to come away in great streaks upon the dung: if after this his stomach fails, then give him white-wine and honey, and the cordial. This is a rare purge, but before you give it, use the directions in the receipt next following. *Proved.*

*For a horse that is sick, or surfeited by colds, either in winter or summer.*

First let blood, then give him this purge. Take of aloas-succatrina two ounces, made into fine powder; then make it up into pills with fresh butter, and give it the horse over night, he having been kept fasting the whole day before, and instead of hay, straw, or any other meats hard of digestion: two or three days be-

fore giving this purge, let his meat be either wheat or rye-bran, or you may give him bread made on purpose, with beans, peas, and some rye in it, or else oats well sifted, both dry and sweet, and let his drink be white-water only, which is nothing more than wheat-bran sodden in water: early the next morning after he hath taken the pills, give him either a sweet mash, or for want thereof, white-water, for that will make his pills to work the more freely that day; then let him fast till night during which time he will purge freely; at night give him white-water, afterwards oats and bran, and give him for all night hay, sprinkled with water. If he be strong bodied he may not purge the first day, but the second day he will surely: in the meantime give him mashes, white bran boiled, and white-water, or clean oats, and after his purging, keep him warm and well littered: keep him to white-water for two or three days after, or longer, and when you give him cold water let it not be to excess.

*Proved.*

*For a strain in the pastern of a horse.*

Take grounds of beer, hen's dung, nerve-oil, and fresh grease that never had salt in it, make a poultice thereof and lay it on: this is admirable for a strain in the pastern or fetlock, and will make a speedy cure.

*Proved.*

*For a horse-cough.*

Take five or six eggs, and lay them in sharp white-wine vinegar till the shells be somewhat soft, then take his tongue in your hand, and put them down his throat one after the other: give them fasting, and let him neither eat nor drink for five or six hours after: ride him a mile or two after you have given it him, and give him warm water to drink for once, and keep him warm.

*Proved.*

*A suppository to supple the guts, and to dissolve and bring forth all dry and hot excrements.*

First rake him, then take a large candle of four to the pound, and cut off three inches at the small end, then anoint the other end with sallad oil or fresh butter, and run it up into his fundament: then hold his tail to his towel for an hour, or tie it close to his towel with a leather strap, and fasten it to his sursingle, and in half an hour's time it will be dissolved: then let loose his tail, mount him and trot him up and down till he begins to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the more kindly. This is the most gentle of all suppositories.

*Proved.*

*A suppository to be given, when you dare not, without peril of his life, give him any thing else inwardly.*

Take of honey six ounces, salnitre one ounce and a half, wheat-flour and anniseeds in fine powder, of each one ounce; boil these



together to a stiff thickness, and so make it into suppositories: anoint these as you did the former, and your hand also, and put it up into his fundament the length of your hand; then tie his tail between his legs for half an hour, in which time the suppository will be dissolved, then ride him and order him as before. This is very good, especially in case of surfeits or inward sickness: but rake him first, and keep him warm. *Proved.*

*A suppository to purge choler.*

Take a piece of casteel-soap, pare it and bring it into the fashion of a suppository: put it into his fundament, and order him as before.

*Proved.*

*A suppository to purge choler.*

Take savin as much as will suffice, staves-acre and salt, of each two ounces, and stamp it to mash, boil them in as much honey as will make it thick; make it into suppositories, and administer one of them as before, and order him accordingly.

*A suppository to purge melancholy.*

Take a red onion and peel it, and prick it crossways with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before.

*Another suppository.*

Take a pint of common honey, and boil it till it be thick, and make it up into suppositories as it cooleth, and administer it, and

order him as before : this suppository purgeth evil humours, cooleth and comforteth the body, and causeth a good appetite to meet.

*Proved.*

*Directions for suppositories.*

First observe this : when at any time you do administer either potions, glisters, or suppositories, you must do it in the morning fasting, except necessity urge the contrary.

Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink cold water, nor not with exercise, but either sweet mashes or white water.

Thirdly, it is very needful before you administer any of these, that you rake him; and be sure you keep him warm.

A suppository is but a preparative for a glister or purge, to make way that they may purge the better.

*To kill worms.*

Take bear's-foot and savin, lavender-cotton and flour of brimstone, give it him in sweet-wort; it will kill the worms, and turn them into slime; the powder of caroline, at the apothecary's, is an admirable thing to kill worms, you may give three or four penny-worth at a time in a pint and a half of sweet-wort. It is a very safe thing. *Proved.*

*To purge by grass in summer.*

If your horse be surfeited, or hath been over laboured the winter before, turn him out

when the grass is in the best heart: grass that will purge best, is a new-mown meadow, for that will rake his guts, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; therefore let him only in fourteen or fifteen days, and then put him into some other pasture, and he will thrive, and in a short time recover again. This purging will scower him, and send away all ill humours and surfeits, ease his limbs and do his legs and feet good, refine his corrupt blood, and make him nimble and full of spirit. Also to mow green rye before it be eared is very wholesome, as it scowereth, cleanseth and cooleth the body, so do the leaves of sallow, and the elm-tree.

*A glister for a sick, surfeited, diseased horse.*

If your horse be newly taken from grass, and that his body should be cleansed from bad humours, which either his gross or former surfeits might bring: first rake him, and then give him the glister following, viz. Take mallows three handsful, marsh-mallow roots, cleansed and bruised, two handsful, violet-leaves two handsful, flaxseed three spoonsful, and a handful of the cloves of white lilly roots, and boil all these in fair water from a gallon to a quart, strain it, and add one ounce of sena, which must be infused or steeped in the liquor three hours, standing upon the hot embers; then add half a pint of sallad-oil, and administer it glisterwise, blood-warm, and

cause him to keep it half an hour, or longer if you can: the best time to give this glister, is three or four days before the full or change of the moon; this glister is to be given to a foggy fat horse, which otherwise cannot be kept clean; the day after you have given him the glister, give him this drink.

*A purge.*

Take the strongest ale-wort, one quart, honey a gill, London treacle two ounces, mix and brew them all together, and give it him blood-warm; then keep him upon the bit six hours after, warmly clothed and well littered, give him a sweet mash, and white-water, and rack him with sweet wheat-straw, oats and bran; this purgeth and comforteth; two or three days after, give him the drink following.

*Another purge.*

Take a pint of white-wine, and put into it one ounce of sena, and let it keep all night; next morning strain it, and add to it one ounce of the best aloes powered, half an ounce of agaric, and a spoonful of the powder of liquorice; mix and brew them all together, give it to your horse blood-warm, and ride him gently a quarter of an hour after it, then set him up well clothed and littered, let no cold air come to him, nor let him eat nor drink for six hours after; at night give him a sweet mash, or white-water, and let his rack-meat be sweet wheat-straw, oats and bran; the next day let

him blood, in the third furrow of his mouth, and if his blood be bad, take two quarts from him, but if good, scarcely a quart: keep him warm, and give him sweet mashes or white-water, and add to his drink either the powder of brimstone, fœnugreek turmeric, or of elecampane, one or more together, according as he may be brought to take them in his drink, a spoonful at a time. This is very good to cool the blood, purge choler, and peccant humours, and to purify and refine the blood; this is not only good for horses newly taken from the grass, but for other sick, surfeited, diseased horses.

*Another purge.*

Take one ounce and a quarter of gentian, slice it thin, boil it in a quart of beer to a pint, and give it him blood-warm; it will make him very sick for a short time, but you need not fear, for it will do him much good: let him fast after it five or six hours, and then give him a mash of white-water; and the next day give him the following:

Mingle honey with his oats, and rub them well together between your hands, and continue thus doing till you see him quite cured, which is when he is done running at the nose. This is one of the best cordials I know, for it disperseth all phlegm and choler, purgeth the head and brain, purifieth the blood, venteth evil humours, causeth good digestion, and



freeth an horse from glanders, colds, catarrhs, rheums, running at the nose, and the like; this and the foregoing purge you must give one after another.

*Of glisters, and their use.*

A glisters is given as a preparative to a purging drink, and a glisters by cleansing the guts refresheth the vital-parts, and prepareth the way; wherefore I advise every Farrier, before he give a drink, whether purging or otherwise, if the horse be not at that time loose in his body, that after blood-letting, the next day he give a glisters: this done he may the better give what is requisite; otherwise if he give the drink before the glisters, he may provoke the evil humours, which by reason of much costiveness and wind in his guts, to attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done with great hazard to the life of the beast. I therefore advise, if the beast be costive, to give a suppository or glisters first, then his purging drink.

*What a Decoction is.*

A decoction is a broth made of divers herbs, as mallows, marsh-mallows, pellitory, camomile, and sometimes white lilly-roots, or such like things, which we boil in water to a third part; and sometimes instead of herbs and water, we take the fat of beef-broth, or the broth of sheep's-heads, milk or whey.

*The quantity of decoction to make a glister.*

The quantity we administer according to the age, strength and greatness of the horse; if he be of a strong and able body, large, fat and lusty, we put in three pints; but if he be small, weak, sick, feeble or lean, a quart is enough; we often put in half a pint of oil, and two or three drams of salt, and sometimes verjuice or honey, as we see cause. Drugs we use, as sena, cassia, agarics, anniseeds, oil of dill, oil of camomile, oil of violets, sugar-candy, and such like.

*The quantity of drugs put in a glister.*

For the quantity of drugs, you ought not to exceed three ounces in one glister, neither above four ounces of butter, and let it be but blood-warm when you administer it.

*What time is fit for a horse to keep his glister.*

When you give it him, let him be empty, rake him: after you have given it him, let him keep it half an hour, it will do the more good the longer he keep it in him: hold his tail close to his fundament all the while.

*The length of the glister-pipe.*

The best instrument to give a horse a glister is a pipe of twelve inches in the shank, which must be put home: and when the glister is put into his body, draw away the pipe by degrees.

*A glister for a horse bound in his body.*

Take a pint and a half of the fat of beef-broth, (if he be sick, weak and lean) but if he be big, fat and lusty, you may take two or three pints; put to it half a pint of English honey, and two drams of white salt: mix them well together, and administer it glister-wise blood-warm; then clap his tail close to his towel for half an hour or longer, and if then it do not work, ride him a gentle trot for half an hour more, but not till he sweat: then set him up warmly clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the bit four or five hours, in which time he will purge freely, then give him sweet hay, and an hour after white-water; he may drink any cold water in a day or two after. This glister will open and loosen the body, bring away all offensive humours, remove all obstructions engendered in the body by means of excessive heat; it cleanseth the guts, and purgeth away all slimy substance. This is the best remedy for a horse that is costive, and has been often proved.

*For another glister.*

Take two handfuls of melilot, two handfuls of pellitory; if you can get neither of them, take two handfuls of camomile, boil any of these in a decoction of water to a third part, add to it sallad-oil and verjuice of each half a pint, honey four ounces, cassia two ounces, mix these together, and administer it luke-

warm, and order him as in the first glister. It will open the guts and body, carry away all spungy matter, allay the billiousness and sharpness of humours, cleanse inward ulcers, and much refresh and comfort the vital spirits; but if you think your horse purgeth and scowereth longer or more violently than he ought, then you may easily allay it with the following glister.

*A glister restraining, to stop looseness.*

Take of the decoction in the glister aforegoing a pint, put thereto as much milk as cometh warm from the cow, and the yolks of three new-laid eggs, well beaten and mixed together, and give it blood-warm: this glister is only to be given to a horse that is very laxative, which is occasioned often by debility, or want of strength, you may give this glister till you see his looseness stop.

*A glister for a fat, foul-bodied or sick, surfeited, diseased horse.*

Take violet-leaves, and marsh-mallow roots cleansed and bruised, of each two handful, flax-seed three spoonsful, cloves of white lilly-roots a small handful; boil all these together in fair water, from a gallon to a quart; then strain it, and put thereto of sena one ounce, which must be steeped in the liquor three hours standing upon the hot embers, and half a pint of sallad-oil, and being blood-warm,

administer it glister-wise, causing them to keep it above half an hour: the best time is three or four days before the full or change of the moon, yet it may be given with much benefit at any other time. This glister purgeth the guts abundantly, and is chiefly to be given to a horse that is newly taken from grass.

*A glister for melancholy.*

Take a quart of whey, a little anniseeds in fine powder, the leaves of mallows two handful; boil these together till the mallows be soft, then strain it, and put thereto of sweet butter four ounces, and when the butter is melted, give it glister-wise blood-warm; this purgeth melancholy, causeth a good appetite, refresheth dull spirits, and causeth a good digestion, if the horse be kept warm and well tended.

*A glister for a desperate sickness: fevers, pestilence, and languishing diseases and surfeits, it will give great strength in a short time, if it be rightly made and carefully given.*

Take of the oils of dill, camomile, violets, and cassia, of each half an ounce, brown sugar-candy in powder three ounces: then take of mallow-leaves a handful, and boil them first to a decoction in fair water, then strain it, and add the before named ingredients, and give it blood-warm: this is most sovereign for all the diseases before mentioned.



*A glister for the pestilence, and old fevers.*

Take half an ounce of the pulp of coloquintida, the seeds and rind taken away; of gum dragant three quarters of an ounce; boil these in three quarts of water to a quart, with century and wormwood of each half a handful, and a quarter of an ounce of castorium; strain it and dissolve it in the decoction of gerolougundium three ounces, white salt three drams, and of sallad-oil half a pint, and then administer it glister-wise, blood-warm. *Proved.*

*A lenitive glister.*

Take the decoction of mallows, and put to it either of fresh butter four ounces, or of sallad-oil half a pint, and give it glister-wise blood-warm; this is the gentlest glister of any before prescribed, for it is both a looser and a great cooler of the body, and doth infinitely ease pain, it is good for convulsions and cramps; and most singular against costiveness, proceeding from any sickness or surfeit by provender or foundering in the body.

*A glister for the cholic, or any sickness or griping in the guts or belly.*

Take salt water or new-made brine, two pints, dissolve therein a pretty good quantity of soap, and administer it glister-wise, blood-warm; this is avered to be most excellent for the cholic, or any sickness or griping in the guts.

*Of sickness in horses.*

Sickness in general are of two forms, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member; the first of them not visible; the other apparent, and known by its own demonstrations. Of the first then, which offends the whole body, as fevers of all sorts, the quotidian, tertian, quartan, and hectick, fevers pestilential, fevers accidental, or the general plague, are known by these signs: much trembling, panting, sweating, and sallow countenance, hot breath, faintness in labour, decay in stomach, costiveness in the body; for any or all, first let the horse blood, and then give him treacle: take of celandine roots and leaves, wormwood, and rue, of each a good handful, wash and stamp them in a mortar, then boil them in a quart of ale, and strain them, and add to the liquor, half a pound of sweet butter; being lukewarm, give it to the horse to drink.

*Of the head-ache, frenzy, or staggers.*

The signs to know these diseases, which are all of one nature, and effect, mortal, is hanging down of the head and reeling; the cure is, to let the horse blood three mornings together; after walk him a while, then clothe him, cover his temples over with a plaster of pitch, and keep him exceeding warm, let his meal be little, and his stable dark.

*Of the sleeping evil.*

The sleeping evil, or lethargy in horses, proceeds from cold phlegm, moist humours which bind up the vital parts, and make them dull and heavy: the signs are, continual sleeping, or desire thereto. The cure is, to keep him much waking, and twice in a week to give him as much sweet soap as the bigness of a duck-egg in a pill, and to give him new milk and honey to drink.

*Of the falling-evil, planet-struck, night-mare, or palsey.*

Although these diseases have several faces, and look as if there were much difference between them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is only cold phlegm, thick humour engendered about the brain, benumbing the senses, and weakening the members; sometimes causing the horse to fall down, and then it is called the falling-evil; sometimes weakening but one member only, and then it is called planet-struck; sometimes oppressing a horse's stomach, and making him sweat in his sleep, and then it is called the night-mare; sometimes spoiling one special member by some strange contraction, and then it is called the palsey. The cure for any of these infirmities is, to give the horse this purging pill:—Take of tar and sweet butter three spoonsful each, beat them well together with powdered liquo-

rice, anniseeds, and sugar-candy, till it be like a paste, then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball two or three cloves of garlic, and give them to the horse, observing to warm him both before and after, and keep him fasting two and three hours both before and after.

*Of the general cramp or convulsion of sinews.*

Cramps are taken to be a contracting or a drawing together of the sinews of any one member: but convulsions are when the body, from the setting on of the head to the extremest part, is generally contracted or stiffened. The cure of either is first to chafe and rub the member contracted, with vinegar and common oil, and then wrap it all over with wet hay, or rotten litter, or else with woollen cloths, either of which is a present remedy.

*For any cold or cough, wet or dry, or any consumption or putrefaction of the lungs whatsoever.*

A cold is caught by unnatural heats, and two sudden cooling, and these colds engender coughs, and those coughs cause putrefaction, and rottenness of the lungs: the cure for them all is this:—take a handful or two of the whitest and greenest moss that grows upon an old oak, or any old oak-peal of wood, and boil it in a quart of milk till it be thick, and being cold and turned to a jelly, strain it and

give it to the horse every morning, lukewarm, till his cough ceaseth.

*Of the running glanders, or mourning of the chine.*

Take or auripigmentum two drams, of tassilagins as much, made into powder, mix them together with turpentine to a paste, make thereof little cakes and dry them before the fire; then take a chafing-dish of coals, lay one or two of the cakes thereon, and cover them with a funnel, letting the smoke in the horse's nostrils up into his head; which done, ride him till he sweats: do this once every morning before he be watered, till the running at the nostrils cease, and the kernels under his chaps be lessened.

*Of hide-bound, or consumption of the flesh.*

It proceedeth from unreasonable travel, disorderly diet, and many surfeits; it is known by a general dislike and leanness over the whole body, and the sticking of the skin close to the body that it will not rise from it. The cure is first, let the horse blood, and then give him to drink three or four morning together, a quart of new milk, with two spoonful of honey and one spoonful of coarse treacle: let his food be either soaked barley, warm grains and salt, or split beans, and his drink mashes.



*Of the breast-pain, or sickness proceeding from the heart, as the antocow and such like.*

These diseases proceed from too rank feeding and much fatness; the signs are, a faltering in his fore-legs, a disableness to bow down his neck, and a trembling all over his body: the cure is to let him blood, and give him two mornings together, two spoonsful of diapente in a quart of ale or beer, for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart.

*Of tired horses.*

If your horse be tired in journeying, or in any hunting match, your best help for him is to give him warm urine to drink, let him blood in the mouth, and suffer him to lick up and swallow it: then if you come where any nettles are, rub his mouth, and sheathe well therewith; then ride him gently till you come to the resting place, there set him up very warm, and before you go to bed, give him six spoonsful of aqua vitæ, and as much provender as he will eat; the next morning rub his legs with sheep's feet oil, and it will bring fresh nimbleness to his limbs.

*Of diseases in the stomach, as surfeits, &c.*

If your horse, with a glut of provender, or eating of raw food, casteth up all he eats or drinks, you must give him diapente or trephernicion, in ale or beer, and keep him fasting; let him have no food but what he eats out of your hand, as bread well baked, oats, and after

two or three bits, a lock of sweet hay, and his drink should be only new milk, till his stomach have gotten strength, you should continually hang at his nose sour bread dipt in vinegar, to which he must smell, and his stomach will quickly come again to his first stomach.

*Of foundering in the body.*

Foundering in the body is of all surfeits the most mortal and soonest gotten; it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horse when he is fat, and then suddenly suffering him to take cold; nothing sooner brings this infirmity than washing a fat horse: the signs are, sadness of countenance, staring hair, stiffness of limbs, and loss of belly: the cure is to give him wholesome meat, and bread of clean beans, and warm drink, and for two or three mornings together, a quart of ale brewed with pepper and cinnamon, and a spoonful of treacle.

*Of the hungry evil.*

The hungry evil is an unnatural and over hasty greediness in a horse to devour his meat faster than he can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat, as if he would devour it whole: the cure is, let him drink milk and wheat-meal mixed together, a quart at a time, and feed him with provender by little and little till he forsakes it.

*Of the diseases of the liver, as inflammations, obstructions, and consumptions.*

The liver, which is the vessel of blood, is subject to many diseases, according to the distemperature of the blood: the signs are a stinking breath, and a mutual looking towards his body. The cure is, aristolochia longa, boiled in running water till half be consumed, and to let the horse drink continually thereof; it will cure all evils about the liver.

*Of the diseases of the gall, especially of the yellows.*

From the overflowing of the gall, (which is the vessel of choler) springs many mortal diseases, especially the yellows, which is an extreme faint mortal sickness, if it be not prevented in time:—the signs are, yellowness of the eyes and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper lip next to his fore teeth, a sudden and faint falling down, and a universal sweat over his body:—the cure is, first let the horse blood in the neck or mouth, or under the eyes; then take a little saffron; dry and rub it into fine powder, mix it with sweet butter, and in manner of a pill, give it in balls to the horse three mornings together: let his drink be warm, and his hay sprinkled with water.

*Another for the same.*

Take a pint of milk and a pint of ale, and make a posset of them, take off the curd clean, and then pare two ounces of casteel-soap into

thin slices, and boil it in the posset-drink for a quarter of an hour, and give it the horse when lukewarm; afterwards mount his back, and ride him gently for an hour, and set him up warm. This has been proved by men as well as horses: the taking and walking or stirring upon it an hour or more, taking it but two mornings together, never failed of curing those that have been so far spent with it that they had been given over.

*Of the sickness of the spleen.*

The spleen, which is the vessel of melancholy, when it is overcharged therewith, groweth painful, hard and great, in such manner that sometimes it is visible:—the signs are much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to the left side only. The cure is thus:—take agrimony, and boil a good quantity thereof in the water the horse shall drink, chop the leaves small, mix them with sweet butter, and give the horse two or three round balls thereof in the manner of pills.

*Of the dropsy, or evil of the body.*

The dropsy is an evil habit of the body, which is engendered by surfeits and unreasonable labour; altereth the color and complexion of a horse, and altereth the hairs in such an unnatural manner that you will hardly know the beast. The cure is this:—take a handful or two of wormwood, and boil

it in three pints of beer, and give it to the horse lukewarm, morning and evening, and let him drink his water at noon.

*Of the cholick, or belly-bound.*

The cholick, or belly-ache, is a fretting, gnawing, or swelling of the belly or great bag, proceeding from windy humours, or from eating of green corn or pulse, hot malt grains without salt or labour, or bread baked badly: and belly-bound is when a horse cannot dung. The cure of the cholick or belly-bound is thus:—take a quantity of the herb Dill, and boil it in his water that you give him to drink, but if he cannot dung, then boil in the water a good quantity of the herb furmotory, and it will make him dung without danger of hurting.

*Of the lax, or bloody-flux.*

The lax, or bloody-flux, is an unnatural looseness in the body, which being not stayed, will for want of other excrements, make a horse void blood only. The cure is thus:—take a handful of the herb called shepherd's purse, and boil it in a quart of strong ale, and when lukewarm, take the seeds of wood-roof, stamp them, put them into it, then give it to the horse to drink.

*Of the falling out of the fundament.*

This cometh through infinite mislike and weakness. The cure is thus:—take town



creesses, dry and rub them to powder, put up the fundament, and then strew the powder thereon, after it lay a little honey thereon, and then strew more of the powder with the powder of cummin, and it helpeth.

*Of botts and worms of all kinds.*

The botts and gnawing of worms is a grievous pain, and the signs to know them are the horse's often beating his belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much desire to lie on his back: the cure is, take the seeds of the herb ameos, bruise and mix them with honey, and make two or three balls of it, then cause the horse to swallow them.

*Of pains in the kidneys, pains to piss, or the stone.*

All these diseases spring from one ground, which is only gravel and hard matter gathered in the kidneys, and so stopping the conduit of the urine: the signs are, that the horse will often strain to piss, but cannot: the cure is to take a handful of maiden hair, steep it all night in a quart of strong ale, and give it to the horse to drink every morning till he be well: this will break any stone whatsoever in a horse.

*Of pissing of blood.*

This cometh by over travelling a horse, or travelling him sore in the winter when ho

goeth to grass. The cure is, take aristolochia longa, and boil it in a quart of ale, and give him rest.

*Of the strangullion.*

This disease is a soreness in the horse's yard, and a hot burning when he pisses: the signs, are, he will piss oft, yet but a drop or two at once: the cure is, to boil in the water he drinks a good quantity of the herb called hog-fennel, or loveage, and it will cure him.

*Of the cold-evil, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, and shedding of the seed.*

All these evils proceed from much lust in a horse, and the cure is the powder of the herb avens, and the leaves of betony, stamp them well with white-wine or moist salve, and anoint the place therewith, and it will heal all imperfections of the yard: but if the horse sheds his seed, then mix Venice turpentine and sugar together, and give him every morning a good round ball thereof, till the seed stays.

*Of the particular diseases in mares, as barrenness, consumption, rage of love, casting foals, hardness to foal, and how to make a mare foal.*

If you would have a mare barren, let a good store of the herb Agnus-castus be boiled in the water she drinks: if you would have her fruitful, then boil a good store of motherwort in

the water: if she lose her belly, which sheweth a consumption of the womb, you shall then give her a quart of brine to drink, and mugwort boiled therein: if your mare, through high keeping, grows into extreme lust, so that she will neglect her food through the violence of fleshly appetite, as is often amongst them, you must house her for two days, and give her every morning a ball of butter and Agnuscastus, chopt together: if you would have your mare cast her foal, take a handful of betony and boil it in a quart of ale, and it will deliver her presently: if she cannot foal, take the herb horse-mint, and either dry or stamp it, and take the powder or the juice, mix it with strong beer, and give it to the mare, and it will help her. If your mare, from former bruises and strokes, be apt to cast her foals, (as many are) you must keep her at grass very warm, and once a week give her a warm mash.

*Of drinking venom, as horse-leeches, hen's dung, &c.*

If your horse have drunk horse-leeches, eaten hen's dung, feathers, or such like venomous things, which you shall know by his panting, swelling, or scowering, take the herb sow-thistle, dry it and beat it into powder, and put three spoonsful into a pint of ale, and give it to the horse to drink.

*Of suppositories, glisters, and purgations.*

If your horse, by sickness, strict diet, and too violent travel, grow dry and costive in his body, as is usual, the easiest means, in extremity, to help him, is to give him a suppository, the best of which is to take a candle of four in the pound, and cut five inches off the biggest end, thrust it up a good way into his fundament, then clap down his tail, and hold it fast to his towel for a quarter of an hour, or half an hour, and then give him liberty to dung; but if this be not strong enough, then you shall give him this glister: take four handfuls of the herb annise, and boil it in two quarts of running water till half be consumed, then take the decoction and mix it with a pint of sallad-oil, and a pretty quantity of salt, and with a glister-pipe give him it at the towel, but if it be too weak, then give him a purgation thus:—take twenty raisins of the sun, stoned, and ten figs slit, boil them in two quarts of running water to a jelly, and mix it with the powder of liquorice, anniseeds and sugar-candy, till it be like paste, make it it into balls, roll it in sweet butter, and so give the horse the quantity of three hen's eggs.

*Of neesings or frictions.*

There are two other excellent helps for sick horses, as frictions and neesings; the first to comfort the outward part of the body when the vital powers are astonished:—the other to

purge the head when it is stopt with phlegm, cold, and other thick humours. Of frictions, the best is vinegar and patch-grease melted together, and very hot chafed into the horse's body against the hair: and to make a horse neese, there is nothing better than to take a bunch of pellitory of Spain, and tying it to a stick, put it up into the horse's nostrils, and it will make him sneeze without hurt or violence.

*Of the diseases in the eyes, as watery eyes, blood-shot eyes, dim eyes, moon-eyes, strokes, warts, inflammation, pearl, pin, web, &c. in the eyes.*

Unto the eye belongeth many diseases, all which have their true signs, and their names; and as touching that which is watery, blood-shot, dim, moon-stricken, or inflamed, they have all one cure, which is thus:—take worm-wood, beat it in a mortar with the gall of a bull, strain it and anoint the horse's eyes therewith, it is an approved remedy: but for a wart or pearl, pin or web, which are evils growing in or upon the eyes; to take them off, take the juice of the herb betony, and wash his eyes therewith, it will waste them away:—every smith can cut a haw.



*Of the imposthume in the ear, poll-evil, fistula, swelling after blood-letting, galled back, canker in the withers, set-fast, wens, navel-gall, or any hollow ulcer.*

These diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no other description but their names; and the most certain cure is to take the clay of a mud or loam wall, straws and all, boil it in strong vinegar, and apply it plaster-wise to the sore, and it will of its own nature search to the bottom and heal it, provided that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, you eat or cut it away.

*Of the vives.*

For the vives, which is an inflammation of the kernels between the chap and the neck of the horse: take a little pepper, a spoonful of swine's grease, the juice of a handful of rue, two spoonsful of vinegar; mix them together, and then put them equally into the horse's ears, and tie them up with two flat laces, shut the ears that the medicine may go down, then let the horse blood in the neck and temple veins.

*For the strangle, or any bile or botch, or other imposthume whatsoever.*

All these diseases are of one nature, being only hard biles or imposthumes, gathered by evil humours, either between the chaps or in the body. The cure is thus:—take southern-

wood and dry it to powder, and with barley-meal and the yolk of an egg, make it into a salve, and lay it to the imposthume, it will ripen, break, and heal it.

*For a canker in the nose, or any part of the body.*

To heal any canker in what part soever it be, take the juice of plantain, as much vinegar, and the same weight of powdered allum, and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will cure it.

*Stanching of blood, at the nose, or proceeding from any wound.*

If your horse bleeds violently at the nose, and you cannot stanch it, then you shall take betony and stamp it in a mortar with salt, and put it into the horse's nose, or apply it to the wound, and it will stanch it; but if he is suddenly taken in riding on the road, or otherwise, and you cannot get this herb, you shall then take any woollen cloth or felt hat, and scrape a fine lint from it, apply it to the place bleeding, and it will stop.

*For pain in the teeth, or loose teeth.*

For pain in the teeth, take betony and seeth it in ale or vinegar till half be consumed, and wash the gums therewith: but if they be loose, then only rub them with the leaves of elecampane, or horse-holm, and it will fasten them.

*For diseases in the mouth, as blood-rifts, liggs, lampras, camery, inflammation, tongue-burnt, or the barbes.*

If you find any infirmity in the horse's mouth as the bloody-rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the horse's mouth; the liggs, which are little bladders within the horse's lips; the lampras, which is an excrescence of flesh above the teeth; the camery, which are little warts in the roof of the mouth; inflammation, which is little blisters; barbes, which are too little paps under the tongue; or any other hurt on the tongue, by the bit, or otherwise: you shall take leaves of wormwood, and sure wort, beat them together in a mortar, with a little honey, and with it anoint the sores, and it will heal them. As for the lampras, they must be burned.

*For the crick in the neck.*

For the crick in the neck, you shall first chafe it with the friction mentioned in a former receipt, and then anoint and bathe it with soap and vinegar mixed together.

*For the falling of the crest, manginess in the mane, or shedding of the hair.*

All these diseases proceed from poverty, mislike, or over-riding; and the best cure for the falling of the crest is blood-letting or good keeping; for strength and fatness will ever raise the crest: but if the mane be mangy,

you shall anoint it with butter and brimstone; and if the hair fall away, take southern-wood and burn it to ashes, mix them with common oil; anoint the place therewith, and it will quickly bring smooth, thick, and fair hair.

*For pains in the withers.*

A horse's withers are subject to many griefs and swellings, which proceed from cold humours, and bad saddles; therefore if you see any swellings about them, take the herb hart's tongue, boil it with oil of roses, and apply it very hot to the sore, it will assuage it or else break and heal it.

*For swaying the back, or weakness in the back.*

These two infirmities are very dangerous, and may be eased but never absolutely cured; take coleworts, boil them in oil, and mix them with a little bean-flour, chafe it to the back, and it will strengthen it.

*For the itch in the tail, the general scab, manginess, or the farcy.*

For any of these diseases, take fresh grease, and yellow arsenic, mix them together, and where the manginess or itch is, rub it hard in, the sore being made raw before; but if it be for the farcion, then slit all the knots, both hard and soft, and rub in the medicine, when done, tie up the horse so that he may not bite himself; after he hath stood an hour, take old piss and salt, boil them together, and

wash away the ointment, and put him to meat: do this for two or three days together, provided always that you first take a good quantity of blood from him, and give him every morning a strong scowering or purge.

*For foundering in the feet.*

There are two sorts of foundering, a dry and a wet; the dry is incurable, the wet is thus to be cured: first pare all the soles of his feet so thin, that you can see the quick, then let him bleed at every toe, and let him bleed well, stop the vein with tallow and rosin, and having tacked hollow shoes on his feet, stop them with bran, tar, and tallow, as hot as possible, and renew it every other day for a week; then exercise him well, and his feet will come to their true use and nimbleness.

*For any halting by strain or stroke, from the shoulder or hip down to the hoof.*

There are many infirmities which make a horse halt, as pricking the shoulder, a wrench in the nether joint, splatting the shoulder, shoulder-pight, strains in joints, and such like, which since they happen by accident, as namely, by the violence of some strain or slip, so that they may be cured by one medicine, as follows: after you have found where the grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every member, you shall take vinegar, bole-armoniac, the whites of eggs and



bean-flour, beat them to a salve, and lay them very hot to the sore place.

*For the splent, curb, bone-spavin, or any knob or bony excrescence or ring-bone.*

A splent is a bony excrescent under the knee or the fore-leg. The curb is the same, behind the hinder hough. The spavin is the like on the inside of the hinder hough; and the ring-bone is the like on the corner of the hoof.—The cure is thus: upon the top of the excrescent make a slit with your penknife, near half an inch long, and then with a fine cornet raise the skin from the bone, and having made it hollow the compass of the excrescent, and no more, take a little lint dipt in the oil of organum, thrust it into the hole, and cover the knob, and so let it remain till you see it rot, and that nature casteth out the medicine and the cure. As for the ring-bone, you need to do nothing more than to scarify it, and anoint it with the oil only.

*For the mallander, selander, pains, scratches, mellet, mules, crown-scabs, and such like.*

For any of these you shall take verdigrease and soft grease, and grind them together to an ointment, put it into a box by itself, then take wax, hog's-grease and turpentine, of each alike quantity, melt them to a salve, and put them in another box; when you come to dress the sore, after you have taken off the scab and made it raw, you shall anoint it with the

green salve of verdigrease and fresh grease only, for two or three days; it is a sharp salve, and will kill the cankerous humour: then when you see the sore look fair, take two parts yellow salve, and one part green salve, mix them together, and anoint the sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker, as you shall find occasion.

*For any upper attaint or nether attaint, or any hurt by over-reaching.*

These attaints are strokes or knots, by over-reaching, either on the back sinew or the fore-leg, on the heels or nether joints, and may be healed safely by the former medicine, which healeth the mallander or selander in the former receipt. For the over-reaches you must, before you apply the salve, lay the sore place open, without hollowness, and wash it with beer and salt, or vinegar and salt.

*For wind-galls.*

These are little blebs, or small soft swellings on each side of the fet-lock, produced by much travelling, on hard and stony ways: the cure is, to prick them and let out the jelly, and then dry the sore with a plaster of pitch.

*For interfering or shackle-galls, or any kind of gallings.*

Interfering is striking one leg against another, and shaving off the skin: it proceedeth

from weakness and straitness of the horse's pace; shackle-galling is any galling under the fet-lock: the cure is to anoint them with turpentine and verdigrease mixed together, or turpentine alone, if it rankles not too much.

*For the infirmities of hoofs, as false quarters, loose hoofs, hoof-bound, hoof-running, hoof-brittle, hoof-hurt, hoof-soft, hoof-hard, or generally to preserve hoofs.*

The hoof is subject to many infirmities, as half-quarters, which cometh by pricking, and must be helped by good shoeing, where the shoe must bear on every part of the foot except upon the half-quarters. If the hoofs be loose, anoint it with burgundy-pitch, and it will knit it: if it be cut clean off, then tallow and burgundy-pitch, melted together, will bring a new one: if it be bound or straightened, it must be well opened at the heels, the sole kept moist, and the cornet anointed with the fat of bacon and tar: if the frush of the foot runs with stinking matter, it must be stopt with soot, turpentine, and bole-armoniac mixed together, if it be brittle and broken, then anoint it with pitch and linseed-oil, melted to a salve: if it be soft, then stop it with soap and the ashes of a burnt felt mixed together: if the hoofs be hard, lay hot burnt cinders upon them, and then stop them with tow and tallow. And generally for the preservation of all good hoofs, rub them daily with a piece of bacon.

*For the blood-spavin, or hough-bony, or any other unnatural swelling.*

These two are pustules, or soft round swelling; the first is of the inside of the hinder hough; they are soft and very sore. The cure is thus:—first bind up the vein above, and let it bleed only from below; then having tied it fast with shoemakers ends on both sides, slit the veins in two pieces, then take linseed and bruise it in a mortar, mix it with cow-dung, heat it in a frying pan, and apply it to the swelling only; if it breaks and runs, then heal it with a plaster of pitch, and the horse will never be troubled with a spavin more. If the swelling comes by a strain or bruise, then take pitch-grease and melt it, anoint the sore therewith, hold a hot iron near it to sink in the grease, then fold a linen cloth about it, and it will assuage all swelling whatsoever.

*For wounds in the feet, as gravelling, pricking, fig, retreat, or cloying.*

If your horse have any wound in his foot by what mischance soever, first search it to see if it be clear of nail points or other splent, wash it well with white-wine and salt, and afterwards tent it with the ointment called Egyptiacum, and lay it hot upon the tent, flax or hards, with turpentine, oil, and wax mixed together, and anoint the hoof on the top and

cornet, with bole-armoniac and vinegar;—do this twice a day till the sore be whole.

*For hurts on the cornet, as the quitter-bone or matlong.*

The quitter-bone is a hollow ulcer on the top of the cornet, and so is the matlong; the cure is, first to tent it with verdigrease till you have eaten out the core, and made the wound clean, then heal it up with the same salve that you healed the scratches.

*To draw out a stub or thorn.*

Take the herb ditany, bruise it in a mortar with black soap, and lay it to the sore; it will draw out the splint, iron, or thorn.

*For the anbury or tetter.*

The anbury is a bloody wart on any part of the horse's body, and the tetter is a cakerous ulcer like it. The cure of both is a hot iron to sear the one plain to the body, and to scarify the other: then take the juice of plantain, and mix it with vinegar, honey, and the powder of allum, and anoint the sore till it be whole.

*For the cords, and string-halt.*

This is an unnatural binding of the sinews, which a horse brings into the world with him, therefore it is incurable, and not painful, but an eye-sore: the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbs in the decoction of colewort.



*For broken bones, or bones out of joint.*

After you have placed the bones in their true place, take the root of Osmond, beat it in a mortar, with the oil of swallows, and anoint the member therewith; then splent it, and roll it up, and in fifteen days the bones will knit and be strong.

*For venomous wounds and bitings, as of a dog, &c.*

Take yarrow, calamint, and the grains of wheat, make it to a salve, and lay it to the sore.

THE EXPERIENCED RECEIPTS OF  
GEORGE JEFFERIES,  
*Of Chester County, Pa.*  
AND A NUMBER OF  
EXPERIENCED INDIANS.

---

*The following receipts may, in some measure, be accounted more natural, as the productions are of this climate, and consequently nearer connected;—that is, the creatures in distress, and the herbs and vegetables for their relief.*

---

*An approved cure for the healing of any old ulcer.*

Take mastic, frankincense, cloves, copperas and brimstone, of each a like quantity, and twice the quantity of myrrh, beat them all to powder, then burn it on a chafing-dish, but let it not flame; then as the smoke ariseth, take a good handful of lint, and hold it over the smoke so that it may receive all the perfume into it, put it into a close box, and keep it for use.

N. B. When you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore with urine and vinegar made hot, then dry it and lay on some of the

lint, and thus do twice a day ; it is a speedy and infallible cure. *Proved.*

*For the stone.*

Take a quart of old clear cider, set it over the fire, take a large onion, cut it small, and put it into the cider ; let it boil a while, then take it off and strain, and give it the horse to drink lukewarm. Do thus as often as occasion require, and it will cure. *Proved.*

*To conglutinate any broken inward member, or broken vein.*

Take of dragant-saffron, and the fruit of the pine, the yolks of eggs, mixed with wine and oil ; this given a horse to drink, will heal any inward member or broken vein.

*Proved.*

*For the bloody flux.*

Take the herb shepherd's purse, tanner's bark out of the pit, and cumminseed, bruise and boil them in a quart of wine, or old cider, give it to the horse lukewarm. *Proved.*

*For the stone, or a horse that can't piss.*

Take a quart of strong ale and put it into half a gallon vessel, then take horse-radishes washed clean, bruise them, and put them into the ale ; cover and stop the vessel so that no air come in ; let it stand twenty-four hours ; then squeeze and strain it, and give it the horse, divers mornings : ride him after, and he will stale. *Proved.*

*Another for the same.*

Take an onion, or more, and steep it in wine; give it your horse, and it will make him piss immediately; it is present ease for the stranguary; forces away sand, gravel, stones, and tartarous matter, from the urinary parts. *Proved.*

*For a horse that pisses blood.*

Take a quart of new milk, liquorice, anniseed, garlick, sallad-oil and honey, of each half an ounce, well bruised, and give it the horse; it is a sovereign help. Boil live honey to a thick salve; it is an excellent suppository for many inward diseases. Boxtree leaves, hempseed, and brimstone, beaten to powder, mixt with oats, is exceedingly good to give to a horse for to digest humours, and to keep him clean and from worms. *Proved.*

*For the mad itch.*

First bleed in the neck, then boil strong lie and vinegar with gunpowder and copperas; make it very strong, tie a clout to a stick and wash the horse where the sores are, and it never faileth of a cure; you may wash with sour butter-milk and soot of the chimney, mixed together, it has cured.

*For the crick in the neck.*

First shave off the hair at the roots of the ears; then take oil of spike and oil of petre, and rub or anoint his neck well with it, espe-

cially the joints at the setting on of the head; make a thumb rope of wet litter or wet hay, and wrap it round his neck, from his ears to his withers, and let it continue for forty-eight hours: be sure you make your thumb rope pretty big, and bind it close together; twice doing will be a cure. It would not be amiss if you were to bleed in the mouth between the second and third furrow. *Proved.*

*Diseases of the gall.*

Bleed in the neck vein, then give the purge for foundering in the body; for the fundament fallen out, wash it well with allum water, and put it up again.

*For the heat in the mouth.*

Jag the upper lip with a lance, and wash it with vinegar and salt mixed together; then give him the purge of aloes for a foundered horse. *Proved.*

*For the head-ache.*

Prick in the mouth, between the second and third bar, with the end of your cornet-horn, or with a pen-knife; let him bleed well, and stand twelve hours, then pour into his nostrils wine or vinegar, having before some frankincense; let his diet be moist and cooling, and he will soon recover; if it be in the winter keep him warm. *Proved.*



*To drive back humours.*

Take vinegar, salt, bole-armoniac, beaten together, and lay it on the sore; or white or red lead and sallad-oil. *Proved.*

*For the Stranguary.*

Take a quart of new milk, and put into it a quarter of a pound of sugar, and give it to your horse six mornings; let his food be warm and comfortable, such as bursten oats, mashies made of malt and bran; give him warm water to drink. *Proved.*

*For the consumption of the Liver.*

Take sulphur and myrrh, one penny-weight of each, pound them to fine powder, then take a new laid egg and bray them well together; put it into a pint of good wine, and brew it well; being lukewarm, give it to your horse fasting.

N. B. Seperate such horses from sound ones, for it is infectious.

*For the looseness of the hoofs.*

Take eggs, and to every egg a spoonful of honey, and to every two eggs powdered rosin as much as will lay on the point of a case-knife; work them together, and thicken it with wheat-meal; then make it warm and apply it plaster-wise. *Proved.*

*For kibed heels.*

Take of wine lees, mixt with soap like an ointment; dress the sores therewith, and it will in forty-eight hours heal any mules, pains

and scratches whatsoever—the leaves and roots of elder is good to dry up any of those evil humours. *Proved.*

*For sinews that are stiff and much bruised.*

Take a pound of black soap, and seethe it in a quart of strong ale till it be as thick as a salve—reserve it, and when you shall see cause, anoint the sinews and joints therewith; it will supple and stretch them forth, although they be ever so much shrunk. *Proved.*

*For a strain.*

Take smallage, ox-eye and sheep's suet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together and boil it in old urine—bathe the strain therewith, then with hay ropes, wet with cold water, roll up his leg that is strained, and he will be able to travel the next day.

N. B. Hay ropes, boiled in old urine, I have known to cure a strain. Or thus, take milk and boil it, and put as much salt into it as will turn to a curd—then strain it, and apply the curd to the strain, and bind it on, renewing it every day, and it will cure any old sinew-strain.

N. B. The scum of salts sod in old urine will cure any wind-gall.—Soap and stone-lime is accounted one of the strongest caustics by being mixed together.

*For the tongue, hurt with the bitt.*

To prevent it, let your bitt be bright and smooth, and wash it often with liquorice,

honey and salt, or beer; but if hurt, wash the tongue with allum water, or the juice of black bramble leaves. *Proved.*

*For a wind-gall.*

Shave off the hair, then get the inner bark of white-walnut, as soon as it is off the tree, and clap it to the wind-gall and bind it on; let it abide on for twenty-four hours; whilst that remains, you should boil some of the bark in running water, and teem the liquor on the wind-gall, so as the bark may not dry; at the end of twenty-four hours, take the bark from the wind-gall, and anoint it with fresh butter or hog's grease, and it is a cure.

*A certain cure for a strain hidden or apparent.*

Take the dog-berry tree, by some called red willow, which commonly grows in meadows, and by creek sides; there are two sorts, that of the broadest leaf is accounted the strongest; scrape off the bark and boil it in spring water, then bathe the grieved place therewith, and take off the bark, thus boiled, and apply it to a strain as you would a poultice, and let it remain twelve hours; you must also, if the strain be great, give of the liquor inwardly, by wetting the bran or other food he eats with the boiled liquor; and by thus doing, it is a certain cure in a week's time, let the strain be ever so great.

*For swelled or goured legs.*

Ride him twice a day to some running stream, and there let him stand a quarter of an hour, or wash his legs well, with the coldest water, in the stable twice a day at least.

*For a sinew-strain.*

Take of oil debay, oil of nerve, and aqua vitæ, mixed together, rub and chafe the strain therewith, and it will cure it; or thus, take a thumb-band of hay and wind it round the horse's leg, then take of the coldest water you can get, and teem it on the hay for a quarter or half an hour successively, twice in twenty-four hours—when the hay is dry take it off. I have known it to cure strains newly taken.

*Proved.*

*For the running of the frush.*

Take allum and old urine, make it hot, and wash and cleanse the foot, and dry the sore with a linen cloth—then take some nettles, dry and pound them to powder—and take some pepper, pound it and mix it with the powder of nettles, and strew it into the wound, and stop it in with flax or hards.

*Proved.*

*For the nether-joint, or any strain.*

Take wheat flour or meal, the clay of a wall and wine lees, all mixed together, and spread a plaster thereof on the strain, renewing it once in twenty-four hours—for a new

strain twice is a cure—the clay must have no lime in it.

N. B. The clay alone boiled in the wine is a speedy cure for any sinew-strain.

*Proved.*

### *Of the fig.*

If a horse has received any hurt, either by stubb, nail, thorn, bone, splint or stone, in the sole or any other part of the foot, and not well dressed or perfectly cured, there will grow in the place a certain superfluous piece of flesh full of little white grains, as you see in a fig; the cure is, first, with a hot iron cut the fig clean away, and keep the flesh down with turpentine, hog's grease, and a little wax, molten together, laid in before, stopping the hole hard, with a little tow, that the flesh rise not, dressing it once a day till it be whole; or thus, after you have cut away the fig, take the top of young nettles and chop them very small, lay them upon a cloth, just as big as the fig, and take the powder of verdigrease and strew it upon the chopt nettles, and so bind it to the wound; thus dress it once a day until the hoof has covered the sore. It is a certain cure.

### *For sore eyes.*

The juice of onions is excellent to wash sore eyes, takes away dimness, mists, clouds, spots, or haws. If used in the beginning, dropt in the ears, it is good against deafness, noise



or ringing in them; the juice mixt with oil and the juice of pennyroyal, applied, is good against all burnings with fire or gunpowder, and heals wounds made by gun-shot.

*Proved.*

*How to burn salt.*

Take a good quantity of white salt, and wrap it hard in a wet cloth—put it into a hot fire, and burn it to a red coal—then take it out and open it, and there will be in the middle a white core as big as a bean, or bigger—beat that core to powder, and put it in some white wine or clear cider, shake it and let it stand to settle again—then pour the clear off, and wash the eye with it once a day, after washing put some of the thick into the eye, and it is a certain remedy for a pearl, pin or spot—the powder of flint of oyster-shells finely seared is very good, blown through a quill.

*Proved.*

*For the canker in the eye.*

Bleed in the temple vein, then take burnt allum and copperas, and bake it together on a stone or iron—then powder it, and add as much honey as will bring it to an ointment—anoint the sores with a feather dipt in the ointment, and it will kill the canker.

N. B. The yolks of eggs and white-wine vinegar is an extraordinary plaster, being thickened with a little wheat meal or rye flour,

for any wound in the foot or elsewhere—the powder of diapente and hartshorn, brewed in ale or wine, is excellent against poison or venom—rue, in milk and sallad oil, is good against poison—white-oak acorn cups, dried to powder and given to a horse in bran, will stop watery humours running under the belly, or allum water, the bran being wet therewith.

*A most approved cure for blindness.*

Take vermillion, betony and lavender, pound them in a mortar till they come to a thick salve or paste; then make it into cakes three quarters of an inch in diameter, dry and lay them on coals, in a pot or dish, cover it with a funnel, and let the smoke go up his nostrils; do this morning and evenings: always when you fume him, wash his eyes with the water of eyebright, and the juice of ground-ivy.

*Proved.*

*Another for the same.*

Take six egg-shells, clean them from the inward thin skin—then lay them between two clean tiles on hot glowing embers, covering the tiles very close: let them lie till the shells be well dried, then beat them to powder, searce them through a fine lawn rag, and with a quill blow it into the eye that hath the pin, web, or film, or any thickness or foulness. Doing this morning and evening, is a certain cure.

*For dimness of sight or blindness, if the ball of the eye be sound.*

Take May-butter, rosemary, yellow-wax, and cellendine, stamp them all together, fry them in a pan, and then strain it, put it in a box, and keep it close: it is excellent for sore eyes.—Or thus, take an empty egg-shell, fill it with bay-salt, burn it black, and take as much burnt allum as the bigness of your thumb—bray them together to an ointment with fresh butter, then with a feather anoint the sore eye, and put some flax dipt in the white of an egg, over the eye, once a day for a week, and once in two days after—it is excellent for a film or pearl. *Proved.*

*Another.*

Take an egg and make a hole in the top of it, pour out one half of the white, and fill it up with salt and ginger, well mixed, and wrap it in a wet cloth, put it in the fire and roast it very hard, then take it out and beat it to powder: when you use it, first wash the eye with the water of eye-bright and the juice of ground-ivy, then with a quill blow in the powder.

*Proved.*

*For pursick, or broken-wind.*

Take an ounce of liquorice-ball, dissolve it in a gallon of spring water, give your horse a pint every morning, and take barley or wheat, and grow it until you see the cheat or beard begin to spring, and give your horse two or

three quarts at a time—if you mix a little good wine with your liquorice-water, it would be much better: be sure to sprinkle his hay, it is a certain remedy. If you wish to stop the heaving of the horse's lungs for a few hours, put a good handful of his dung into a quart of new milk, stir it, and give it to the horse, but let him have no drink—this will stop it for a few hours, perhaps a day.

*A never-failing cure for any old cough, hoarseness, wheesings, &c., in man or beast.*

Take onions, bake them until they are quite soft, then take the pulp, and add to it fresh butter and salt, and give it to the horse fasting, for three or four mornings, rolled up in balls. For a man, eaten with bread in the morning, fasting, it is a cure for any hoarseness.

*For a cold in the head, or glanders.*

Draw a bag over the horse's head, then fume up his nostrils with a lighted match—do so for three or four day, then let blood in the neck-vein, and give him this drink. Take one gill of vinegar, and two or three new-laid eggs, mix them well, give them to the horse in the morning fasting, and ride him half a mile after: rub his pole well with goose-grease, for it is excellent for any thing of the kind. Tar and sweet oil mixed together, and tied to the bit, is very good for a cough.

*For a dry, over-grown cold or cough.*

Take forty grains of pepper, four or five roots of horse-raddish, four heads of English garlic, or for want thereof, six or seven heads of common garlic; pound them, and take five ounces of sweet butter, and work them all well together into balls: give the horse one ball every morning fasting, for a week, either in beer or cider, and making him fast for two hours after he has taken the ball. It is a most approved medicine for any old cold or cough.

*Proved.*

*For the yellows.*

By the signs before mentioned in this disease, a horse will drop down:—at all times when it happens, immediately take out your knife, and prick him in the third bar in the furrow of his mouth, and let him bleed a gallon; then give him half an ounce of diapente in a quart of strong beer, and it is a speedy remedy. If you can't get diapente, be sure that you get some comfortable cordial.

*For costiveness, or belly-bound.*

If your horse is not very bad, you need only to rake him, and gallop him till he sweats, and then give him a handful or two of clean rye, with a little brimstone mixed in it: but if bad and violent, take a quarter of a pound of soap, a handful of spurge, and a handful of hemp-seed, bray them together, and give



them to the horse in a quart of new ale, luke-warm, then ride him a full hour after.—Give him warm water and mashes for a few days, and the horse will recover.

*For a farcy.*

First bleed in those veins that most feed the farcy, then give him this drink; take one ounce of aloes, and boil it in three pints of water until reduced to a quart, add to it one gill of molasses, as much soft soap, and half as much yeast, and give it to the horse luke-warm. Ride him a mile before and after it, and keep him warm for two or three days until the physic has done working.

*Proved.*

*For the tetter.*

A tetter is a filthy kind of ulcer like a canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread but remaineth nearly in one part, and many times between the skin and flesh like a knotted farcy, and will not break. The cure, according to the opinion of ancient and experienced farriers, is to make a strong lye with old urine, ashes, and green copperas, and bathe the knots therewith; it will kill and heal them.

*Proved.*

*A certain cure for a sinew-strain.*

Take one pint of wine lees, put it over the fire, then take some of a mud-wall, straws and all, that has no lime in it, and put it to the

wine lees, boil them to the consistency of a salve, and clap it on hot to the strain; doing this once or twice is a perfect cure.

*An excellent medicine for any wind-gall, sinew-strain, blood-spavin, splint, curb, &c.*

First shave off the hair, then take cantharides or Spanish flies half a quarter of an ounce, mixed with a little nerve-oil: spread it upon the grieved place, and tie the horse up for eight or ten hours, till it has done working. Next morning squeeze out the water with your finger and thumb, but take care not to break the skin. If you think once does not do, the next day spread on some more, and do as before directed, for twice will certainly perfect the cure. It is best to spread the medicine thin on the sore; two or three days after anoint it with sallad-oil, neats-foot oil, or fresh butter, it is a perfect cure.

*For wind-galls.*

They are very apparent about the fet-lock joints of an over-ridden horse: first open the wind-gall with a lancet, making the orifice no bigger than that the jelly may come out, then squeeze it a little to send it away: take a wet woollen cloth, wrap it on the wound, and press upon it with a hot iron until it sucks up all the moisture from the wind-gall, then take pitch, rosin, and mastic, of each a like quantity, melt them together, and daub it over the wind-gall very hot—clap on a good quantity

of shearman's flocks, and there let it remain until it comes off of its own accord, and the wind-gall will be cured.

*For a desperate strain, imagined to be past cure; the sinew and swelling being bony, hard, and knotted.*

Take piece-grease, which is made of shoemakers' threads, melt it on the fire, anoint and bathe the strain therewith, very hot, and with your hand rub it in very well, then hold a hot bar of iron against the strain to make the medicine sink in, and take a linen roller and roll it up gently: do this once a day, and it will take away the most desperate strain.

*For the crown-scab.*

It grows in a cankerous matter on the coronet and on the heels: the cure is to wash it well with vinegar or old urine, and then take dog's grease, bole-armoniac and turpentine, well mixed, and apply it to the sore, and let the horse be kept dry—this will cure. The powder of honey and lime, or turpentine simply of itself, will dry and skin any wound. Take turpentine, honey, hog's grease, wax, and sheep's-suet, of each a like quantity, melt them together, and boil it to a salve—it will heal any wound.

*For a strain in the stifle.*

Take oil of turpentine, linseed-oil, oil of Petre, olive-oil, and oil origanum, of each one

ounce; half an ounce of oil de bay, and half an ounce of nerve-oil.

N. B. Shake them all well together, and anoint the grieved place once in twelve hours, and with your hand rub it well in; it will take away his lameness in forty-eight hours.

*For the mange.*

Bleed in the neck once or twice—then with a card, rub or card the scurf off—then take tar, turpentine and linseed-oil, as much as you think proper—incorporate them well together, being hot, (but not to scald) anoint the mangy places therewith: once doing is a cure.

N. B. Let not your saddle or collar, that was upon a mangy horse, go on any other, for it will quickly give it to a sound horse, being an infectious disease.

*For a sinew-strain.*

Take a quart of milk, boil it on the fire, and put as much salt into the milk as will turn it to a hard curd, then bind it on hot to the strain, renewing it once in twelve hours, it will cure it.

N. B. Wash or bathe the strain with warm vinegar, before you put on the curd, to hasten the cure.

*For a horse new galled with a saddle or collar.*

As soon as you take either the saddle or collar off, wash the galled place with water and salt, or urine and salt, and then sprinkle

upon it wood ashes, or wall mud, which is the best. Or get the root of the herb clowns-wort, burn it to a coal, (not to ashes) pound it to a powder, and after washing the sore, strew on some of the powder, it will quickly heal the galls, although they be almost rotten and putrefied.

N. B. The more you ride or work a horse that is galled, the sooner he will heal—keeping the saddle or collar from the sore.

*A fine Poultice for a new strain.*

Take a pint of sharp vinegar, (white-wine is the best) and one pound of fresh butter, seeth the vinegar and butter together, and thicken it with as much wheat bran as will bring it to a paste, then put it as hot as possible on the strain, it will cure it.

*For a swelling in any part of the head.*

Take of his own dung as soon as he maketh it, clap it on hot, and bind it fast, it will take it down. If it require, renew it twice a day.

*For an old Ulcer in man or beast.*

Take three quarts of new milk, and a good handful of white plantain, set it on the fire and let it boil to a pint, then take three ounces of allum, and one ounce and a half of white sugar-candy, pound them to fine powder, and put it into the milk and plantain, and boil it a little till it come to a curd, then strain it, and with the warm whey, bathe the ulcer, then dry the wound, and lay on some ungu-



entum basilicon: this drieth, cleanseth and killeth any itch, and healeth the foulest ulcers either in man or beast. Also, if you take one quart of milk, powdered allum two ounces, and a spoonful of vinegar, and when the milk doth seeth, put in the allum and vinegar: then take away the curd and use the rest, this will dry up and heal any foul sore whatsoever.

*For the scratches.*

Clip away the hair, then rub the sore till it be raw, wash it with old urine, allum and salt, as hot as it can be borne, then take the tops and buds of elder, and green brier berries, boil them in two quarts of sweet wort, and add a good store of allum, being very hot, wash his legs two or three times; it is a certain cure.

*A certain method to take away any splint.*

Take the root of elecampane, wash it clean, then clap it up in wet brown paper, and roast it in hot embers till it be well done, but take care you do not burn it; rub and chafe the splint, and as hot as the horse can bear, clap this root right on the splint, and bind it fast, and in two or three days dressings it will consume it quite. But do not lay it on so hot as to scald. Also, if you rub the splint with the oil of origanum, morning and evening, it will take it away.

*How to make the powder of honey.*

Powder as much unslacked lime as you think fit, and take as much honey as will

make it to a stiff paste ; make it into a thick cake or loaf, and put it in a hot oven or a strong fire, and let it be baked or burnt red ; then take it out, and when cold, pound it to a very fine powder, and use it as occasion shall require : this will dry, heal, and skin any sore whatsoever to admiration.

*For a horse that is gored with a stake or such like.*

Throw your horse on a dunghill, or some soft place, and pour into the wound molten butter scalding hot, and let him lie till the butter is gone quite to the bottom of the wound : do this once a day till he be whole. If you desire to keep the wound open, then tent it with a piece of candle, it will both draw and heal : The powder of green copperas, put into any wound, will keep it open ; or if any proud flesh grow in a wound, scalded butter and salt will eat it away, so will verdigrease or burnt allum : honey and wheat flour, beaten to a salve, will heal a wound very speedily.

*To cure a wound made with shot, gunpowder, lime, or fire.*

Take warm urine, or sweet oil, bathe and wash the sore, then, to kill the fire, take cream and oil beaten together, and anoint the sore, and when you see it raw, spread upon the wound cream and soot mixed together, and strew upon that some of the powder of honey

and lime: do thus until the horse is perfectly sound, which will be soon. Turpentine, eggs and saffron, beaten together will make a fine salve. Shoemaker's wax, yolks of eggs, wheat flour and honey, mixed together, will make a fine plaster for a wound.

*For the bite of a mad dog.*

First give him two or three spoonful of diapente in ale, wine, or cider, then take a live pigeon, open it, and lay it hot to the wound, and the pigeon will draw out the venom: heal the sore with turpentine and hog's grease, molten together. The leaves of aristolochia bruised, will take away any poison, or scrape the wound and put garlic and salt to it, it will draw out the venom. You may bleed in the neck if occasion require.

*For a canker.*

Rub the canker as you are shown in this book, then anoint with vinegar, ginger and allum, made into a salve, and it will cure it soon.

*To dissolve humours.*

A pound of figs, well stamped with salt to a perfect salve, dissolveth all humours, by opening the pores and giving large passages.

*For a Fistula.*

To sink, first sear the fistula with a hot iron until the skin look yellow, then make a plaster of rosin, sheep's suet and brimstone,

melted together, and lay it on hot, but not to scald; if it is broke, or likely to break, then lay on a plaster of shoemaker's wax, spread on allumed leather, on purpose to break it; and when broke, take verdigrease, butter and salt, well mixed and melted together, pour it scalding hot into the sore, and use this till the flesh look red, then tent with verdigrease, burnt allum, wheat flour and the yolks of eggs, well beaten and mingled together, till it is healed: to skin it, take barm and soot mixed together, and spread it on the sore, it is a perfect cure: the searing, and plaster of rosin, soot and brimstone, is very good for windgalls.

*The string-halt,*

Is an imperfection some horses bring into the world with them, and others get it by hard travel, being over-strained; it being so obvious, needs no description. The cure, take up the middle vein above the thigh, and under the vein you will see a string, which string you must cut away, and then anoint the wound with melted butter and salt, and the horse will do well.

*To heal the biting or stinging of serpents, or any venomous beast whatsoever.*

First bleed in the mouth, then make a plaster of honey, onions and salt, pounded and mixed together, and lay it to the wound; then give the horse honey and treacle, in wine, to

drink, or else white pepper, rue and thyme, mixed with wine: or take asphodillus, hastus regia, and steep them with old wine, and lay it to the sore: or take a good quantity of the herb sanicul, pound it and temper it together with the milk of a cow until it be all of one colour, and give it to the horse to drink; it will heal him.

*For brittle hoofs.*

Take hog's grease, dog's grease and turpentine, mix them together, and anoint the hoofs therewith. Dog's grease is an exceedingly good thing for a brittle hoof.

*For the vives.*

Shave off the hair, then take shoemaker's wax and spread it on a piece of allumed leather, and put it on the sore; do not remove it until it break it; renew it, and it will both heal and dry it. It is an exceedingly good thing for a pole-evil before it breaks.

*To harden any softness.*

Take the powder of honey and lime, or the powder of oyster-shells, or the powder of a burnt sheep-skin, or thick cream and soot, mixed together, will harden any sore whatsoever.

*For bones out of joint.*

First swim your horse in some pond, creek, or river, and if that does not bring the joint into its place, then cast your horse on his



back, and put four strong pasterns on him below his fetlock; and draw him up by his legs so as his back may no more than just touch the ground; then draw the grieved leg higher than the rest till the poise and weight of his body has made the joint shoot into its right place again, which you will know by the crack it will make when the joint falleth into its place: then gently loose him and let the horse rise, let him blood in the plate vein, or in the master vein, which is the big vein that is in the inside of the thigh; then anoint the grieved place with the ointment for broken bones, or with the oil of mandrakes, or the oil of swallows, both which are of sovereign virtue.

*Of the rage of love in mares.*

It is reported by some of our English farriers, that mares, being proud by high keeping, in the spring of the year, when their blood begins to wax warm, when they go to the water, will, on seeing their own shadows therein, presently fall in love therewith, and from that love, get into such a hot rage, that they will forget to eat or drink, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking about and behind them. The cure for this folly is, presently to lead the mare to the water, there let her see herself as before, and the second sight

will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her folly.

*For a mare that has cast her foal.*

Take two spoonsful of diapente and brew it well in wine, or strong beer, or else a cordial of honey, wine and anniseeds, well brewed together, and let her food be sweet mashes and comfortable drinks; what hay she eats, see that it be clean and sweet.

*Of gelding of colts, or old horses.*

Gelding is so common a practice, that there is no great occasion of enlarging much thereon. I would advise no unskilful hand to undertake any thing of the kind, lest he add disgrace to himself and kill the horse; to those that are practitioners and skilful, I would recommend the use of the true and genuine British oil, poured into the holes as soon as the stones are cut out, and more especially for aged horses; and the general use of train-oil for suppling the cods; and by thus using you may cut at any age without danger. The dregs of the train-oil is the best. *Proved.*

*To get horse colts.*

Take your mare to the horse before the full of the moon, and when the sign is a female. To get mare colts, cover after the full, and in the male signs.

N. B. There are twelve signs, six male and six female.

*To make hair smooth, sleek, and soft.*

If you wish your horse's coat to be smooth, sleek, soft, and shining, keep him warm at the heart, for the least inward cold will make the hair stare: make him sweat oft for that will raise up the dust and filth that makes his coat foul and hard: then, when the horse is in the greatest sweat, with an old sword blade, the edge turned towards the hair, scrape away all the white foam, sweat, and filth, that is raised up, and that will lay his coat even, and make it smooth; and when you have let him blood, rub him all over with some of it, and let it remain on him for two or three days, then curry him and dress him well, and this will make his coat shine like glass.

*For costiveness in the body.*

Take rye-straw, cut it fine, scald it and wet it well; then mix rye-meal or bran with it, and let the horse eat it as hot as he can; it will quickly loosen him. *Proved.*

*For the bite of a mad dog, or the bite or sting of serpents.*

Take raw onions, green rue, a little salt, and some of the powder of the root of cle-campane, beat them together in a mortar, and mix them well; apply it to the wound plaster-wise, and renew it as occasion requires.

*For the founder in the body.*

If you find him lame, bleed him in every foot, and give him this drench:—boil one

ounce of aloes in three pints of water until reduced to a quart, then add one gill of molasses, the same of soft soap, and half as much yeast; mix them together and give them to the horse lukewarm: ride or drive him a mile afterwards; when it has done working, give him two ounces of the powder of elecampane, half an ounce of flour of brimstone, rolled up in butter and a little honey, and made into balls: wash them down with good beer, ale, or wine, or old strong cider, until he be quite recovered. Let his food be clean and comfortable, give him cordials made of white-wine and he will soon recover.

*For fevers in general.*

If you find your horse has a fever, first let him bleed in the neck-vein, then give him an ounce of diapente in beer, wine, or cider, for three mornings fasting: rub his limbs well twice or thrice a day, and let his diet be cooling, but no cold water.

*Against poison or venom.*

Take a good handful of rue, boil it in three pints of new milk; then add one gill of sallad-oil, and give it to the horse lukewarm with a horn, it is excellent against poison.

*Proved.*

*For a lax or much scowering.*

Take a little allum and bole-armoniac, finely powdered, put them in a quart of new milk,

stir it till it comes to a curd, then give it to the horse with a horn. A pint of verjuice is good for a sucking foal.

*For the botch in the groin or imposthumes.*

Take snap or jumping weed, clowns-wort, and elder tops, of each a like quantity, and boil them well; strain them, and to the liquor add one pound of hog's lard, and let it boil to the consistency of a salve: anoint the sore therewith until it be ripe, then lance it and wash the wound with soap suds, or water and salt, and heal the wound with ointment made of the aforesaid herbs; it will cure it quickly.

*To keep a horse that he shall not neigh.*

Tie a woollen list about his tongue, and he cannot make any noise while that remaineth.

*How to make unguentum basilicon.*

Take honey, storax, galbanum, bdellium, black-pepper, the marrow of a stag, of each a like quantity, twice as much armoniac, and as much of the powder of frankincense; incorporate them with sheep's suet, and apply it to the grief.

*How to make the oil of red cedar.*

Split the heart of red cedar very small, then put it into a pot as full as it will stow: then take a board and bore it full of holes, and put it over the pot; then get a vessel, and put it into the ground, as large as the mouth of the pot, and turn the pot with the board as a cover, upside down, just on the



vessel set in the earth—then bank it well all round, and make a fire on the bottom of the pot, and continue it until the cedar be burnt to a cinder. The oil will drop through the board with holes, into the vessel. This oil, being heated well in with a bar of iron, drives back imposthumes; is good for strains, being mixed with other molifying oils, and heated in as aforesaid.

*An excellent drench for botts, worms, or for a  
foul stomach.*

Take an earthen pot, make a hole in the bottom, and stop it with a spile, put in a little straw, and take about four or five lumps of the white dung of a hen, and three pints of good ashes, as much chimney soot, and put all these into the pot; then put to it two quarts of hot water, cover the pot, and let it stand one hour: take out the spile and draw off the liquor; then take a pint thereof, and add to it one gill of hog's grease, give it to the horse lukewarm—it will perfectly cleanse his stomach, kill the worms, and cause him to rope at the mouth abundantly. I would not advise it for a general drench, but in extreme cases.

*Proved.*

*How to make black ash lye, for the curing of  
ulcers, poll-evils, fistulas, &c.*

Burn the tops and bark of black-ash, to ashes on some clean place; put those ashes

into a vessel with a spile in it, on a little straw, then pour on boiling water and cover it up; let it stand three or four hours, then draw it off, and if it be not strong enough, put it on the ashes again: (it will be the stronger for boiling) then draw it off, and put it in a bottle for use. This lye, made warm, and put into any old ulcer or fistula, will of itself search, cleanse, and heal to admiration.

*Of the diseases incident to mares, and of the barrenness of the womb.*

The only disease incident to the womb of a mare (as far as our farriers are experienced) is barrenness, which may proceed from various causes, as through the intemperance of the matrix being either too hot and fiery, too cool and moist, too dry, too short or too narrow, or having the neck thereof turned awry; or by means of some obstruction in the matrix; or that the mare is too fat or too lean, and many other such like causes. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of old farriers, is to take a good handful of leeks, and stamp them in a mortar with four or five spoonsful of wine, then add thereto twelve cantharides, or Spanish flies; then strain them all together with a sufficient quantity of water, and serve the mare therewith for two days together, by pouring the same into her nature with a glister pipe, made for that purpose; and at the end of three days following, offer the

horse unto her; and after she is covered, wash her nature twice with cold water.

*Proved.*

*For broken bones.*

First sling your horse so that he may scarcely bear any weight upon his feet; if it be a fore-leg that is broken, raise him a little highest forward, but if a hind leg raise him a little behind, so that the horse may most rest upon the sound members: when your horse is thus slung, set the bone in its right place, then bathe it well with warm vinegar or with the spirits of wine; wrap it close with wool directly from a sheep's back, and bind it with a good linen roller, soaked in vinegar and oil, and see that your roller is plain and smooth—lay more wool upon your roller, dipt in oil and vinegar—then splint it with three broad splints bound at both ends with strong twine, and in that manner keep the horse for forty days, not moving it more than three times in twenty days, except it shrinks and requires to be fresh dressed. Always keep his leg as straight as possible, and be sure to pour oil and vinegar once a day through the splints. At the end of forty days, if the bones are knit, let the horse stand a little on the fore-leg, and if he treads firm, let him quite loose, and anoint the sore with soft grease, or with one of the following plasters or ointments:—take spuma argenti, and vinegar, of each one

pound, half as much sallad-oil, three ounces of armoniac and turpentine, two ounces of wax and rosin, of bitumen, pitch, and verdigrease, half a pound each; boil the vinegar, oil, and spuma argenti until it gets thick, then put in the pitch, and when that is melted, take the pot from the fire and put in the bitumen, that also being melted, put in all the rest, and set the pot to the fire again, let it incorporate well, and strain it for use. Before you lay on the plaster, use this ointment:—take one quart of sallad-oil, of hog's grease, and spuma nitre, one pound each, and let them boil together until they begin to bleb above. Use this ointment very hot, and rub and chafe it well in, then put on one of the plasters—it is most sovereign for any broken bones.

*An approved cure for a fistula.*

Take two large handfuls of the real arsesmart, pound it, and steep it in water all night, lay it on the fistula or pole-evil, and clap your hand on it and keep it there till you find the warmth come to your hand, then take the arsesmart and bury it, and throw the water that you steeped it in on the place where you buried it—and as the arsesmart rots, the malady will sink. It is a cure that has been often proved; one time may be sufficient, but you may do it four or five times. The arsesmart has a red stalk, bears a white flower, and tastes very hot.

*An approved cure for the mourning of the chine.*

The horse will run thick matter at the nostrils, which will be full of little red streaks.—Boil a great quantity of the middle green bark of elder, in a pot full of water, half away, then fill it up again, and do so three times, and when boiled half away the third time, take it from the fire, and strain it through a linen cloth—to this decoction add one third as much of the oil of oats, or for want thereof, sallad-oil or hog's grease, or sweet butter, and being warmed again, give a quart of it to the horse to drink, one horn full at his mouth and another at his nostrils, especially at that which runneth most. Give it to him fasting, for it not only cureth this disorder, but also any sickness proceeding from any cold: it would be good to use to his body some wholesome friction, and to his head some wholesome bath. If it be in the summer, let him run out, if in the winter, stable him, and let his diet be sweet hay, warm water, and mashes.

*A certain cure for a horse that is hide-bound.*

First let him bleed in the neck-vein, then give him this drink; take of celandine two handfuls, of wormwood, and rue, one handful of each, (if it be in summer, the leaves and stalks will do, but if in winter, use the roots and all) chop them, and put the whole into three quarts of strong beer; boil them till



they are reduced to a quart, then strain all the moisture from the herbs, and dissolve it in three ounces of molasses, and give it to the horse lukewarm, fasting, then for a week together, rub the horse's body all over with oil and beer, or butter and beer, against the hair. Let his diet be warm mashes of malt or bursten oats, rye, or barley, and he will soon recover.

*General drench and medicines for all inward diseases or surfeits in horses.*

There is no medicine more sovereign for all diseases in horse's bodies, than to take half an ounce of the powder of diapente brewed either with wine, sack, muscadine, or clear beer, or strong clear cider. For heart-sickness, give him it for three mornings fasting especially when the horse first begins to droop.—The next is take celendine two handfuls, root and leaves, chop and bruise them, take rue and red sage, and mint, each as much as the celendine, and half an ounce of aloes; boil these in half a gallon of strong beer to one half, then give it to the horse, lukewarm, fasting. Another.—Mix four ounces of clarified honey, and keep it in a close glass: give him half an ounce thereof in a pint of sweet wine, it is an excellent drench. Another.—Take one ounce of liquoric, of anniseeds, cumminseeds, and elecampane roots, each half an ounce, of turmeric and bays, each

a quarter of an ounce, of long-pepper and foenugreek, two drams each: pound these small and searce them, then put five spoonsful into a quart of warm ale, with a little butter or oil: it is very good for any disease coming from old causes. Another.—Take a quart of good ale or wine, and a raw egg beaten and mixed with twelve scruples of quick sulphur, and four scruples of myrrh made into powder, give it to the horse; it is a good drench. The root of sea-onion, and the root of poplar, mixed with common salt, and given in water, keepeth a horse long in health. The powder of brimstone in sweet wine is a good drench. Take fine powder of foenugreek, and steep it in water until it be as thick as wax, then add one pound of sweet butter, one ounce of linseed oil and as much of the oil of nuts, mix them well together, and give it to the horse in three or four days drink, a pretty quantity at a time. Celendine boiled in beer, from a half a gallon to a quart, and mixed with anniseeds and sugar-candy, and a good quantity of sallad-oil, is a choice drench for any sickness that proceeds from hot causes, such as frenzy, anticow, &c.

*Three excellent and much approved medicines for any cold, dry cough, shortness of breath, pursiness or broken wind.*

First.—Take three spoonsful of tar, the same quantity of sweet butter, work them

well together, and add fine powder of liquorice, anniseeds, and sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste, then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball four or five cloves of garlic; give them to the horse, and warm him with riding both before and after you give him the pills. He must fast for two hours both before and after them.

Second.—Take a piece of fat bacon, four fingers long, and about two fingers square, cut several holes in it, and stop in them as as many cloves of garlick as you can, then roll it in the powder of liquorice, anniseeds, sugar-candy, and the flour of brimstone, equally mixed together. Give it to your horse fasting in the morning, at least twice a week, and ride him after it, and be sure you sprinkle all the hay he eats with water, and it will soon perfect the cure.

Third.—Take two ounces of the syrup of colts-foot, of elecampane anniseeds and liquorice-root, one ounce each, pounded very fine: two ounces of sugar-candy, divided into equal parts; then work the syrup and powders, and one part of sugar-candy, into a stiff paste with sweet butter, and make pills thereof, and roll them in the other part of the sugar-candy: give the horse one or two pills every morning fasting, and exercise him gently for an hour after. Do thus divers mornings, and you will find him mend in a short time.

*Of rowelling.*

The use of rowels in some cases may be good, but may not be idolized, where a horse is full of running humours, that he swell under the belly, or on his legs or heels; you then may put one under the belly, but to give your horse one or two drying drinks, to work by urine, is far better, as it dries up the very root of the cause, and a rowel does no more than draw the filthy matter off, and leave the roots behind. If your horse has slipt either his shoulder or hip, and after you have swam him and bled in the plate-vein, in the cheek, or master-vein, in the inside of the thigh, which you should do immediately as he comes out of the water; I say, if you find his lameness mend, then you may rowel between the spade-bone and the shoulder, or the inside of the thigh.

N. B. I have heard say, a piece of poke root, applied in manner of a rowel, betwixt the neck and the shoulder, will sink any fistula at first coming—it has been proved in Marlborough, Chester county.

All rowels should be turned every day, or otherwise they are of no effect. A common English rowel is made with a piece of the upper leather of an old shoe, after this manner:—cut the leather round, two inches in diameter, and cut a hole in the middle of the leather a full inch in diameter—then take tow and wind it round the leather quite smooth

and tight, leaving a hole in the middle.—When you use it, let the part be where it may, you must take up the skin with a pair of nippers or smith's pincers, and with a sharp penknife make a slit right in the skin within the pincers, but no larger than to get the rowel in with difficulty—then part the skin from the flesh, large enough to receive your rowel—grease with hog's fat, and put it in—then having ready rosin and tallow, or turpentine and tar, molten, take tow and dip in it, and put it in the hole after the rowel, and some dry tow after that until the place be nearly full—it will bring the rowel to digest in twenty-four hours or sooner—when you see it begin to work, draw forth the tow, and be sure you turn it with your finger every day, for fourteen or fifteen days, or longer if required. And when you leave off turning it, the rowel will work out, and heal of itself, leaving no eye sore. I look upon this rowel as the easiest to be applied, and to answer the end and design the best—with proper care it will work far the strongest.

*Proved.*

*For botts or worms.*

Take one gill of rum, two ounces of pilgrim's salve, shake it well together and give it to your horse: it is said to be a present cure.



*Another.*

Take red precipitate, as much as will lay on a shilling, work it up into pills with sweet butter, and give it the horse, ride him after, and it will kill all the worms and botts.

*Proved.*

*For a farcy.*

Dissolve three quarts of strong beer in six ounces of stone lime, give it to the horse in two drinks, at two days distance—it is a cure.

*Proved.*

*For a ring-bone.*

If the callosity of a ring-bone does not spread itself below the coronet of the hoof, and is hard and bony, you may take it out by applying a caustic thus: Shave off the hair close, and apply the caustic, made of stone-lime and soft soap, and let it lie on but twenty-four hours; in that time, or less, if your caustic be good, it will penetrate to the very root of the ring-bone, and come clean out in fourteen or fifteen days. In the mean while keep some of your suppling and drawing salves to it, also keep it clean from filth and dirt: when the ring-bone is out, apply your healing salves, and wash the wound with soap-suds, or lime or allum water, or whey, dressing it once in twenty-four hours: when proud flesh arises, scald it off with butter and salt, or burnt allum, or any of your eating powders. Thus do with care, and there will be no doubt of

cure. A ring-bone at first coming is easily cured, sometimes by a mild blister only; if it should be obstinate and grow, then first fire gently, and apply a blister plaster or two, and when they are dry, make a poultice of oat-meal, oil and vinegar, and bind it on, and turn the horse to pasture; it is a cure without much eye-sore.

*For a horse when he is badly surfeited.*

Take four ounces of the inner bark of the white shaking asp-tree, boil it in three quarts of running water, to half a gallon; then take out the bark and dissolve one ounce of aloes in the liquor, and add thereto one gill of rum, one gill of molasses, and give it to the horse lukewarm as a drench.

N. B. I have been credibly informed, the bark of the white asp is a remedy in all fevers.

*Proved.*

*For foundering of the body.*

This disease often proves of very bad consequence, and is chiefly brought upon the horse by means of unskilful, careless, immoderate keepers and riders: the cure is, to bleed all his feet with a fleam on the top of the hoof, and then give him this drink—take nine or ten cloves of garlic, of pepper, ginger, and grains of paradise, two penny-worth of each: bruise them well together, and give it in half a gallon of strong beer, at two drinks, and

afterwards give him nourishing food and comfortable cordials. *Proved.*

*A most certain and approved cure for any hurt upon the coronet.*

Take soap and salt, of each a like quantity, mix them together like paste; cut out the over-reach or hurt, and lay it open and plain; then wash the wound with old urine and salt, or with beer and salt, and take a cloth and dry the wound, and bind on the soap and salt, and let it continue on twenty-four hours. If the wound be great, do thus for three or four days together till you see the venom is drawn out; then take two spoonsful of train-oil, and as much white lead, mix them to the thickness of a salve, and lay it to the wound morning and evening until it be well, which will be soon.

*For a pole-evil.*

The decoction of oil of snapweed, two ounces, the oil of turpentine one ounce, mixt together, is an excellent thing for any fistula or pole-evil, either to heal it when broke, or to backen it, if near ripe to break it; but to backen, there should be an equal quantity of both. *Proved.*

*For foot-founder, either old or new.*

First, with a very sharp drawing-knife, pare every part of the soles of the horse's feet till you see the water and blood issuing forth;

and be sure to pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a butteries; and at the very sharp end of the trush of the horse's foot you will see the vein lie; then with your knife's end lift up the hoof and let the vein bleed, which as long as you hold open the hoof, will spin a great way forth: when it bleeds better than a pint, close the hoof to stop the vein, and tack on his foot a hollow shoe, made for that purpose; that done, clap a little tow, dipt in hog's grease and turpentine, upon the vein very hard; then take two or three hard roasted eggs, hot out of the fire, burst them in the sole of the horse's foot; then pour upon them hog's grease, turpentine and tar, boiling hot, and as much flax, dipt therein, as will fill up the hollow shoe, then lay on a piece of leather to keep all in. and splint it sure. In this manner dress all the feet foun-dered—dress the horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble, you shall be sure to have the horse as sound as ever. *Proved.*

*For a cough.*

I have been informed that an Indian turnip, dried, and finely powdered, and mixed with bran, is a certain cure for a cough.

*An excellent scowering for a running horse, where molten grease must be taken away.*

Take twenty raisins of the sun. pick out the stones, and ten figs slit, and boil them till

they be thick ; then mix powdered liquorice, anniseeds and sugar-candy, with the raisins and figs, to a stiff paste, and make balls of it ; roll the balls in sweet-oil or butter, and give them the horse as you see cause. Give him strong exercise both before and after you give him these balls. See scowerings for the running horse. *Proved.*

*To make hair grow quick.*

Burn green walnuts to a powder, and mix the powder with honey, sweet-oil, and wine ; anoint the place therewith, and it wonderfully increaseth hair very soon ; or take southernwood and rusty bacon, and make it into a salve ; it will bring hair quickly. Ashes of dead bees, mixed with any sort of oil, will do the like.

*For wens in any part of the body.*

First sear them with a hot iron, then heal them with the powder of honey and lime ; it is a present cure. *Proved.*

*Relief for a tired horse.*

Take a quart of strong beer, cider or wine, and add half an ounce of elecampane ; brew it well together, and give it to the horse with a horn ; it will make him very cheerful : also tie a bunch of penny-royal to your bit, and it will prevent your horse from tiring. Or thus, take off your saddle and rub his back with arsesmart, and lay some under the saddle, and



ride him: with good feeding and moderate usage, it will prevent your horse from tiring. Rub your horse all over with rue, and no flies will come near him. *Proved.*

*To stop bleeding at the nose.*

Take two small whip cords, and tie them very hard just beneath the elbows of his fore-legs, then lay wet cloths or hay on the nape of his neck, and it will stop presently. The hair or cloths must be kept wet.

*Proved.*

*For the botch in the groin, or any imposthume.*

Take a piece of allumed leather the bigness of the sore, and spread some shoemakers wax on it, lay it on the sore, and it will ripen it.—When ripe, lance it, and wash the wound with allum-water, and anoint it with the ointment called Egyptiacum, which will cure it soon.

*Proved.*

*How to make a black star.*

Take the rust of iron, galls and vitrol. and pound them with oil, anoint the place where you would have the star, and the hair will turn black.

*Proved.*

*For the dropsy, or evil habits of the body.*

In one gallon of beer put a good quantity of wormwood-seed, leaves and stalks, and boil it to a quart; skim and strain it, then add to it three ounces of treacle, an ounce and a half

of long pepper beaten to powder: bleed him in the neck-vein after he has stood awhile—give him the drench, and rub his fore-legs with train-oil, then turn him to pasture.

*Proved.*

*For the dropsy in man or beast.*

Take broom, and make diet-drink thereof, and use it as you see cause. *Proved.*

*For a canker or sore in any part of the body.*

Boil a quantity of poke roots in a quart of water until reduced to half a pint, then take six ounces of hog's grease, one gill of tar, and one ounce of the flour of brimstone, boil them together till the water be boiled away, and use it for a common salve, for any violent canker or sore. *Proved.*

*For the strangles.*

Bleed under the tongue, and fume with the decoction of camomile; poultice with bran, vinegar, salt, and hog's lard, and it will soon cure. *Proved.*

*An excellent receipt for the stone.*

Take half an ounce of nitre, and a good root of horse-raddish, scrape it very fine, and infuse it in a quart of wine or old clear cider, and you may add five or six egg-shells, finely powdered. Let it infuse twenty-four hours, then give it to your horse; but you may give it sooner if necessary. *Proved.*

*For the botts.*

Take half a pint of urine, a gill of rum, of pepper and gunpowder, a large spoonful each; shake them well together, and teem it in your horse. It is said to be an absolute cure.

*An ointment for blisters.*

Nerve, and marsh-mallow ointments, of each two ounces, of quicksilver and Venice turpentine, one ounce each, a dram and a half of Spanish-flies powdered, a dram of sublimate and two drams of origanum.

*Proved.*

*A general cure for any strain in the shoulder, or any hidden part.*

Fill a large earthen vessel with the herb arsesmart and brook lime, bruised together: cover them over with old urine—cover the vessel close, and set it in a cool place: when you have occasion to use it, take a pipkin, and put into it as much of the urine and herbs as you think you may want, and let it boil well, then, if the strain be in the shoulder, cut the foot off an old boot, so that you may draw it over the horse's foot quite up his leg to his elbow, keeping the lower part of the boot as close to his leg as possible, and let the upper part of the boot be wide open; stuff the mixture into it as hot as the horse can bare it, and lay it close and fast about his shoulders, especially before and behind, then draw up the upper part of the boot, fasten it to the

horse's mane that it may not slip down, and do so once a day till it be cured. This medicine is so violent, that if there be any foul matter it must come forth—it will bring it to a head, and ripen, heal and break it.

*Proved.*

*An Indian cure for old, ulcerous, sore legs in men.*

Take sassafras leaves, dry or green, in winter or summer, apply on the sores a poultice thereof with milk and hog's lard, renewing it occasionally—when the poultice is off apply the leaves, which will cure very easy to the patient. I have been credibly informed, that the Indian has cured white people by this when the surgeon said their legs must be cut off.

*For a fistula, or poll-evil.*

The root of black hellebore is a certain remedy. In case the ulcers are extremely bad, you may put a piece of the root into it, to foment and cleanse it, but be sure let it go no further, for it would draw the horse up into a heap, that he may never recover. If it be used in the manner of a rowel, it will draw all humours to any part of the horse's body: it is so dangerous, that I would not recommend the use of it to any unskilful hand: some of the root stuck into an apple, and given to a horse in the manner of a ball, is a very good purge in extreme cases. *Proved.*

*For the mad itch.*

First give a drying drink or two, made of forge-water, crocus-martis, Venice-turpentine, and flour of brimstone; the drink for the pocky farcion; the guajacum chips and forge-water, or any other of the drying drinks: then make soot, lime, soft-soap, and train-oil, into a salve, and anoint the horse therewith. *Proved.*

*To ripen imposthumes.*

Bruise mallow-roots, and white-lilly roots, and boil them in milk, thicken them with linseed meal, and apply it as a poultice, it will ripen any imposthume whatsoever.

*Proved.*

*For cankerous tumours in the feet.*

Take cow-dung, tar, and hog's-fat, make a poultice thereof, as hot as possible, so as not to scald, and apply it round the hoof.

*Proved.*

*For galled shoulders.*

Take half a pint of rum and a piece of hard soap, make a lather, and wash the shoulders therewith; it hardens and heals them. Rattle-snake's grease will do the same.

*Proved.*

*For the first coming of a fistula or poll-evil.*

Take tansy, worm-wood, and arse-smart, bruise them, and put some cold water on them, then put them into a bag, and lay it on the



tumour, and let it remain for two hours, then take it off, and bury it under the root of one of these herbs, and as it rots, the disorder will sink and remove. The oil of amber, well rubbed in, is said to do the same, or the spirit of turpentine well heated in with a bar of iron. Where those disorders are hard, guaiacum-oil or palm-oil, are exceedingly good to assuage and sink hard swellings and tumours. Rue boiled in milk, and sallad-oil added to it, and given in the manner of a drench, is an exceedingly good antidote against poison.

*Proved.*

*For the haw, commonly called the hoakes.*

The haw is a gristle growing beneath the nether eye-lid and the eye, and covereth sometimes more than one half of the eye: from phlegmy humours, which descend from the head, and knitting together, grows to a horn or hard gristle: the signs are a watering of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, besides an apparent show of the haw itself. The cure is, take a needle and a double thread, run it through the tip of the horse's ear, and through the upper eye-lid, and fasten it to his ear, then with your thumb put down the nether lid, and you can plainly see the haw; put your needle through the edge of the haw, and with the thread draw it out so as you may lap it about your finger, fasten the thread about your little finger, and

with a sharp knife cut across the gristle of the inside, next the horse's eye, separating the skin and the fat from the gristle, cut the gristle quite out: then cut your threads and draw them out of the eye-lids, and the haw; fill the eye with fine salt, and leave no blood in the eye; take good care not to cut away too much of the wash or fat by the haw, nor any part of the black that groweth about the end of it, for that may make your horse bleer-eyed.

*Proved.*

*For a swelling after blood-letting.*

In this case, if it be in the neck, which is the most likely, let not your horse run at pasture until he be thoroughly cured; when your horse begins to swell, wash it well with water and salt, or urine and salt, squeeze it often with your finger and thumb, but if you find it will swell, then take snap or jumping-weed, or die-weed, pound it, and boil it in a gallon of spring or running water to a pint; strain and squeeze the weed well; then set the liquor over a gentle fire, put one pound of the purest hog's lard thereto, and boil it gently to a salve, stir all the while it is boiling—then take it off for use. With this salve rub and chafe the grieved place well, which will draw the venom out, and perfect the cure—it is one of the best things I ever met with in such cases, or almost any wound.

N. B. Make an ointment of the aforesaid

weed, and the herb crown or woundswort, and May butter unwashed, or clarified hog's lard. I believe it to be one of the best for any wounds in man or beast—it will draw, purge, cleanse and heal, in a short time.

If you find the swelling, after blood-letting, obstinate, so as not to be speedily reduced by the salve, then take of the snapweed a good quantity, and fry it with good store of hog's lard, but not until it be crisp, apply it as a poultice to the swelling: this poultice and ointment will assuredly draw out the venom, and cure any thing of the like nature.

*Proved.*

*For any wound made with a stake, or goared by a cow, &c., in any part of the horse's body.*

Wash it well with the juice of the poke, or a decoction made of the root of poke, and use nothing more than the aforesaid ointment, always washing with the poke first, it will speedily perfect a cure, suffering not the wound to wrinkle, fester, or proud flesh to grow.

N. B. The tree called the fringe-tree, bears something like white silk fringe, and grows by the sides of running streams, of which the Indians say, that the bark of the root will heal a man that is shot through, or cement any flesh together, by steeping the bark in spring water, and applying it to the wound, and keeping it moist while it remains

on the wound, with spring water. It has been experienced by a man who cut his thumb almost off, so that it is not unlikely but that it may be good for horses that have their sinews cut or broken. *Proved.*

*For an apoplexy, falling evil, staggers, phrenzy, &c.*

I met with some horses whose disorders were in effect a composition of the whole disorders as above; on a circumspect observation of their symptoms and signs, it did not appear that one particular of these was the cause, but that they were all united, and with sharp fits of an intermitting fever. They had been ill three days, and had been bled in the neck; I immediately bled them in the mouth, put some tar on the nostrils, and ordered them to be clothed and kept warm—I ordered a friction of goose-grease, vinegar and honey, melted together, and being hot, rubbed the poles and napes of their necks therewith very painfully—then added to this friction a little spirit of turpentine, and rubbed it well across their loins against the hair; then ordered a man with a good wisp of straw to rub them well for near half an hour; this cheered them a little, and began to set the blood and juices to work a little, in their proper tone—then ordered some long dung that would heat, to be laid on their loins, six or eight inches thick, and to be bound close on; then I made

a drink of wild comfry root, elecampane, fennel-seeds, garlic, a good quantity, of wormwood, ditany, spicewood, bark, ginger, household bread, butter, honey, rosin, molasses and clear cider, prepared in the manner of the sovereign drink, for internal ailments, in this book recited, and gave it them. The same evening I used the aforesaid frictions, rubbed them, changed their dung, littered them with straw to keep them warm, and left them till morning, when I saw that they would recover with proper care taken, in a few days, and the disorder in a great measure broke. I followed the same that day and the next, and the day after. I bled them in the mouth again, still doing as heretofore; after three days I gave the drink but once in two days, but continued the rubbing and friction, and the dung, renewing it twice a day, and they perfectly recovered in a little time, beyond the expectation of every person that saw them. There were other horses taken with the same disorder, which I was not with, but most of them died. Bleeding in these cases once, twice, or three times, a little at a time, is of good effect—the friction is certainly good, as it clears the head and brain, opens the vessels, and causes perspiration in those parts; also strengthens the loins, and drives the disorder from the kidney; the dung is a great help to the friction, as it keeps the loins and kidneys warm for the friction to do its office,



and in a manner to draw part of the disorder and fever outwardly, which you may see by the dew on the loins when you renew your dung in its proper season—the drink is a strong antidote against poisonous qualities, or nourisher of feeble stomachs, a strengthener of weak lungs, nerves and arteries: the rubbing with the straw gives great circulation to the blood and juices, strengthens the limbs, and frees them from stiffness. I am quite of opinion, that these remedies will work a cure in any of those disorders.

N. B. As those disorders are infectious, separate the sound from the sick, and rub tar on their nostrils and bridle bits, and let them drink with it—you may fume with a match of brimstone.

*Proved.*

*For a fistula, or a poll-evil.*

These are both one disorder, although not both in one place; take of old poke-root a good quantity, bruise them well, and boil them in water, vinegar, or chamberlie, and add thereto a pint of soft-soap, and wash therewith scalding hot; then take tincture of myrrh, and pour some in the wound in each hole after you have washed and dried the wounds with tow, once in twenty-four hours, keep your horse on dry food, nor suffer him to run at pasture; for a speedy cure give him those drying drinks, viz. Take forge water and crocus martis, or the guaiacum shavings,

sarsaperilla and stone raisins; while he is under cure, wet his bran with a strong decoction of sassafras root, which may answer the end of the former drinks—or once a week give him three quarters of a pint of linseed oil, and by a steady application of this external wash and tincture, those disorders may be removed in twenty days or less. The virtue of this tincture is so well known by surgeons and able farriers, that there is no occasion of scrupling its efficacy. If you have a horse whose fistula has been a running ulcer for some months, and the bone is affected thereby, cut all the horny, callous flesh away, until you come to the bone, and when bare, scrape the bone, and apply tents, of equal parts, of tincture of myrrh and euphorbium—then fill the hole up with molten snap-weed ointment, always using the decoction whilst any ulcer remains; but if the bone keeps putrified and crumbled, or any string, sinew, membrane is ulcerated, putrified or affected, I say, in this desperate case, so long as it remains in that order, there will be no cure perfected: you must get an iron in the form of a glazier's iron, the head thereof should be steel, finely filed, heated hot, and when the sparkling is off, burn to the very bottom of the fistula; then for once or twice use the snap-weed ointment, or a salve made with the high snake-root, which is not unlikely to draw out the fire and venom; then use the decoction of euphorbium, which will

bring to use the internals. I am apt to believe by a constant application, as is here laid down, a speedy cure will be soon perfected.

N. B. You are cautioned, in incision, to beware of sinews and arteries.

*For the glanders.*

Some young horses with cold or surfeit will run a blueish matter at the nostrils, but that is no glander; on the contrary, nature is relieving itself; when the matter from the nostrils is of a gluey, cruddy nature, greenish, white or yellowish, or thick, the glands under the jaws fallen, kernels one larger than the other, and several small ones sticking close to the bone; those kernels in the mourning of the chine are generally more spread under the whole chaps, and loose in the midst of the two bones, just under the wind-wipe or we-sand, the gleet at the nostrils is generally white and clotty; by these signs a glander may be known. The remedy, take goose-grease, any quantity you like, and rub it on the pole and nape of the neck as occasion require; I have in a great degree experienced its efficacy in some sort in this disorder, yet not in a case of desperacy, with success. I am quite of opinion, provided the spine is not too far ulcerated, that this remedy, and fuming at the nostrils with any of the fumes in this book, or assafoetida and castor, and two or three drinks of the decoction of sassafras root,

a quarter of an ounce of gum guaiacum dissolved in it, given lukewarm, will perfect a speedy cure. This remedy seems to be nearly calculated for the disorder in desperate cases: the goose-grease thus used will cause any common running at the nostrils speedily to evacuate, disperse and dry up, which I have proved. *Proved.*

*A plaster for a sore back.*

Take what quantity you please of wheat-meal, half the quantity of sheep's dung, and of rye-meal half as much as of sheep's dung, boil them together, in spring water, to a thick paste, then spread it on a piece of allumed-leather or tow cloth, and clap it on the sore: you must tie your horse, or he will gnaw the plaster off. If possible, let the plaster stay on till it comes off of its own accord: also, you may make a plaster of soot, rye-meal, whites of eggs and honey, beaten together, and apply it as above, and it will cure it; but the other method is the best. If there be any filthy matter in the sore it must first be let out. For a new gall, when you take off your saddle, wash it with water, or salt and water, then strew some hickory ashes or wall mud thereon; it will soon cure it. If a horse's back be almost rotten, after you have washed the sore with clean water, but I recommend the water made for running ulcers, take of the root clownswort, or clownswound wort, burn

it to a coal and pound it very fine, and strew the powder on the sore; this in a few days will cure any horses's back, if it be nearly rotten: the more you ride or work a galled horse, the sooner he will be cured, if you keep your saddle and collar from the wound.

*Proved.*

*For botts and worms.*

Various receipts are laid down in this book; they will all free a horse from botts or worms, if he is not too far spent. The signs are, they will be knotted under the upper lip, and when those knots appear to have yellow heads, they are far gone, and only curable by speedy remedy: but when he sweats at his sore bowels, and his breath is strong and hot, there is a doubt of his ever being cured. They will likewise, if not very bad, often rub their breech against a fence or post, look lean and tired, the hair will stare, often striking their hind feet against their belly, show signs of the cholic, lay down and stretch themselves, get up hastily and immediately feed greedily. The cure is, (if not incurable) first bleed him plentifully in the mouth, that he may swallow down a large quantity of blood, or for want of it, take three pints of milk and sweeten it well with molasses, and give it him to drink blood-warm; let him stand near an hour that the botts may loose their hold, and fill themselves with the blood, or milk and molasses;



then take one pint of linseed oil, give him one half, and the remainder next morning:—it is so safe that you may ride or work him immediately after it. This oil will kill them in an instant, for I have often seen the experiment proved, by dropping the bott or worm into it, which instantly killed them:—it has been tried by other common oils, but the effect is not so quick, although it is supposed that most oils may destroy them, especially those of a close texture, therefore if you use this remedy alone, before your horse is too far spent, which by the signs before recited you may readily know, as being taken from observation and experience, you need not lose any creature with that disorder, and your beast will afterwards thrive exceedingly well, so that you may give a horse thereof once or twice a year, especially in the spring, just before he goes to pasture; it will purge away molten grease, and gross humours in a great degree, and in a manner prevent disorders of the like nature: the nature of its working has been found by experience to be quick and free from trouble. The original, or breeding of botts, has gone through divers speculations, but an ingenious friend informed me, that their progeny is actually from the horse-bee in the summer season, and are some months before they come to maturity: the manner he says, is thus:—he observed a horse to have voided a bott with his dung, and immediately

took part of the dung, with the bott, and some earth, in a glass tumbler, and covered it close, and by often viewing, he found it wings and legs to grow until it became a perfect bee, near the time that those insects are first seen. His opinion is, that the horse imbibes them from the number of knits those insects fix on their coats, by nibbing and gnawing themselves. The certainty of which I shall leave to the ingenious to judge, but recommend the above remedy as certain. The decoction of savin, dissolved in nitre and well sweetened with honey, is one of the best receipts for botts or worms, and very safe for children that have worms. The decoction of savin and hickory ashes, mixed with their food, will both prevent their breeding and destroy them. *Proved.*

*An excellent drink for colds, coughs, surfeits, pursiness, heaving of the lungs, or any inward sickness.*

Take a good quantity of wild comfry roots, half the quantity of elecampane roots, a good handful of moss from the Spanish oak, a good handful of ditany, four ounces of fine powdered fennel-seed, two double handfuls of spice-wood bark, a middling quantity of hysop, two ounces of English gentian, if to be got—wash the roots clean, and bruise them well—boil them all in a kettle, except one ounce of the fennel-seed, in five quarts of water, over a smart fire, until three quarts of the water

be consumed, having well covered the kettle, then take it off the fire and let it stand till it be cooled and done steaming, still keeping it covered close, then strain it and press the roots and herbs that there may be liquor enough for three drinks, used in this manner, viz.—Take clear old cider, one quart, and one third part of the decoction, and put them into a kettle, with a good piece of household wheat bread, one ounce of ginger, and a third part of the powdered fennel-seeds; put it on the fire, and let it boil for four or five minutes, then take it off, and cover it close until near cool, then add butter, honey, molasses, of each two ounces, one ounce of powdered rosin, worked exceedingly fine, then give the horse the drink, lukewarm, with a horn, you must not mix the rosin with the drink, but put some of it in the horn, as you drench him:—three of these drinks, given in nine days, will cure almost any inward disease. These drinks are extremely helpful to broken-winded horses, and a body founder in a horse, also a special remedy for a mare that has slunk her foal—it soon recovers a horse that is jaded and overdone, and hide-bound—they will quickly fatten and thrive after it. It would be well if in any of those disorders you would give, for fourteen or fifteen days, bursten-oats, and mashes of bran and malt, a little at a time, and often. The virtues of these drinks are

valuable. You may bleed in the neck or mouth, if the disorder should require it.

*Proved.*

### *Of bleeding.*

The drawing of blood is certainly of great benefit in many disorders, yet I cannot agree with many that recommend the frequent practice of it to healthy, sound horses. I am certain it greatly diminishes their natural strength, and takes from them two or three years that nature has allowed them; I grant that to bleed a horse that has no apparent ailment in any season of the year, may suddenly thrive and get fat beyond expectation; but immediately to bleed him to prevent the yellows, as generally from that case springs the disorder, is a general maxim that experience makes perfect: therefore I shall prescribe a few simple rules, practiced by those that were very able judges of horses, far exceeding the custom of bleeding healthy sound horses in general, especially those that are much stabled. If you, once or twice in the summer, take a double handful of green rue, shred very small, and give it to your horse at twice feeding, in bran, it will enliven him, prevent worms, and gross humours, and refine the blood: also about Christmas time, if you wet your bran with half a pint of stale urine, for nine mornings successively, you will find it to occasion a free passage for the blood-

juices to work in their proper tone, and thereby, perhaps, prevent gross humours and worms in the spring. I am certain it greatly strengthens their wind, when fed altogether on dry meat: you may also, near the spring, give in several feeds eight ounces of the flour of brimstone, but by no means the roll or stone brimstone, it being impossible to pound it fine enough to give inwardly, and not unlikely but that a worse disorder might ensue than that which you intended to prevent: the flour is safe, and will quickly work and answer the expectation of keeping the blood and juices in their proper tone and proportion. You may also, in the spring and fall, take three pints of smiths-forge water, dissolve in it one ounce of any clear turpentine, one ounce of crocus-martis, and an ounce of the flour of brimstone, and give it to your horse as a drench in the following manner: take a hornful of the liquor cold as it stood, and with the point of a case knife put part of the brimstone and crocus-martis on the liquor in the horn, then pour it down, and so do in like manner until he has received it all. This purges by urine, works off any gross humour, refines the blood and juices greatly; you may also take three quarts of forge-water, and put therein eight ounces of guaiacum chips, two ounces of sarsaparilla, four ounces of raisins of the sun, with the stones out; boil them to one quart, then strain it, and add one quart of



wine, clear beer, or strong cider, sweeten it well with honey, and give to your horse lukewarm, at two drinks: you may add half an ounce of flour of brimstone to each drink: by thus doing, with reasonable labor, accidents excepted, you may always have a healthy, sound horse, from colds, strains, windgalls, and gross humours. The decoction of sassafras root is very good to wet the bran every other morning, for ten days, in the spring and fall. The decoction of spice-wood is an exceedingly great nourisher of any poor or lean horse.

*How to make the oil of oats.*

Take two gallons of milk, warm it, and add a quarter of a pound of burnt allum, which will make it run into a curd; then cast the curd away, strain the whey into a clean vessel, and add a quarter of a peck of clean, husked, undried oats with the whey, and let it boil until the oats burst and be soft, then put them into a cullender that the whey may go gently through without pressing, (for you must keep the oats as moist as possible,) then put the oats in a frying-pan, and set them on the fire, stirring them continually until you see the vapour not to arise, but as it were to run about the pan; then suddenly take it off, and press them exceedingly hard, and what runs from it is the oil, which save in a close glass. This is the most easy and

sure method. It is of all other medicines and simples the most excellent for a horse's body, being extracted from the most wholesome and best food for a horse. This oil being given, four or five spoonsful at a time, in a pint of sweet wine, or a quart of strong beer, or some of the whey poured into the horse's nostrils, cures the glanders before all other medicines: it is also given in the same manner as one of the best purgations, for it purgeth away all the venomous and filthy humours that feedeth the most incurable farcy whatsoever.

*Proved.*

*For cows that cannot calve.*

The signs are apparent; they will look dull about the eyes, and seem to be almost dead, which shows that the time of calving is then, and they will not all strive for themselves. Their milk will nearly dry up, and seem to look full of inward sickness. To help them if they are lying, raise them, and when you have them very fair, you may perceive, about an inch within their bearing, a sort of a string or membrane that binds very tight; take a sharp penknife and cut that string above and below, so that the calf may come forth, you may draw it from her easily. Be sure that you take no more of the cleaning away than what is loose, perhaps the remainder will soon follow—then take rosin finely powdered, and dust it well on the calf

bag, and what remains of the cleaning, and thrust it up to its place again—before you begin, give in order to strengthen, nourish and comfort her, a quart of strong beer or cider, mulled with eggs, ginger, butter and molasses, and after you have drawn the calf away, a good mash of malt, and let her be kept warm, with nourishing food, she will do well. *Proved.*

*For a cough in oxen.*

Put one gallon of spring water in a vessel, and take barley malt a double handful, bean flour better than half as much, stitch-wort a handful, bruise the stitch-wort and put all together into the water, stir it, and let it stand twenty-four hours, then either morning or evening give it your beast with a horn, half at a time, one day after another. If he mends you may give it him four or five times every other day.

*For the cure of most inward diseases in cattle.*

Take of the roots of the tall rattlesnake weed, a good quantity, shake the earth from them, bruise them well, and put them into a gallon or two of spring or running water, and let it steep twelve hours or more. When you use it, pour off half a gallon thereof and give it your beast cold; repeat it three mornings, and will find it excellent to relieve those disorders. If your cattle are very poor, it will

help them much to bleed in the neck the first morning you begin to drench.

N. B. Those drinks are exceedingly helpful to poor cattle in the spring. You should not boil those roots on any account, for when boiled they are poison and immediate death to cattle. *Proved.*

*For cattle that have lost their cud.*

An ox, or any other beast, will mourn and eat nothing, because he cannot digest what he has already eaten, if he happens to loose his cud, as perhaps by some occasion it may fall out of his mouth; to remedy this, some take part of the cud out of another beast's mouth of the like kind; if it be a cow that wants her cud, they take part of the cud of another cow, giving it her to swallow down, and she will be well; and so the like of other beasts. Others bruise a quantity of the herb called cudwort, and put to it a quantity of hog's fat or butter, and so make the beast that hath lost its cud swallow it. Others put a piece of leaven, (rye is better than wheat) into the beast's mouth, and thereby it will recover: but if it be of a long standing, so that the creature is far spent and wasted, take out its tongue, prick the vein under it with an awl in two or three places, so it bleed plentifully, and it will get well. *Proved.*

*For cattle that are swelled by eating green corn,  
or such like.*

Your cattle will be in danger or death, without a speedy remedy, if through the negligence of the keeper they eat of corn, barley, wheat or rye, before it be ripe. To help them, some people drive them up and down, and jump them over a fence, backward and forward, until the swelling assuage, which is very good, and they often recover thereby. Others throw a new laid egg, shell and all, into the beast's mouth, and break it therein, making it swallow it with ale or beer. Some take a handful of nettle tops, well bruised and strained, with wine or honey-water. Others stamp or strain juniper leaves or green berries, with wine, and give it to the beast; some give the beast, in ale or beer, soot and the hard roe of a dry herring, well bruised; but let it be remembered, with either of these remedies, all which are approved, that you be sure to rake your beast well for the better opening of the passage.

N. B. Give your cattle when swelled, plenty of oil or grease of any kind, it is an immediate cure. *Proved.*

*For the coming down of the palate of the mouth  
in cattle.*

The palate of the mouth of a beast, by hard work, will be apt to come down, but seldom otherwise. Signs are, they will often sigh,



and would fain eat but cannot. The cure is, first throw the beast on some soft place, then with your hand put it up again; when up, prick or cut the palate so as it bleeds, then rub its mouth and palate well with honey and falt, well mixt, and turn the beast to pasture, for he must eat no hay nor dry meat. If it should happen in the winter, let his food be wet bran or green corn.

*For the worms in cattle.*

The signs are, they will look wild in their eyes, run to and fro bawling, run at people, their veins are large and full which demonstrate it to be the worms. The cure, first bleed in the neck, and catch the blood in a pail, add store of salt to the blood, and stir it well with a stick to keep it from clotting—then take a pretty quantity of melted hog's lard and some molasses, and stir them in the blood and salt; and give it the beast as a drench, take one gill of rum, and a large spoonful of gunpowder, shake and stir all together, and teem it into the beast. *Proved.*

*For cows that don't clean well.*

Take three rattles from the rattlesnake, pound them fine and give it in mulled cider, with store of ginger and eggs well beaten, shells and all; this I find the most certain. Or take tansey roots, what quantity you like, and boil them in spring-water, as much as

you may think sufficient for a good drench; then take three or four eggs, beaten well, shells and all, add thereto soot and ginger a good quantity, mingle all together, and sweeten it with molasses; being lukewarm, give it the cow in the manner of a drench, which has been found to be very helpful in such cases.—Others boil savin and give the cow the decoction in a mash of bran and malt, and say it is an immediate remedy.

*Things good to breed milk in kine.*

If your cow's milk, after she has calved, comes not down, take some coriander and anniseeds, (for want of anniseed, fennel-seed will do) what quantity you please: pound the seeds very fine and put them into a quart of strong posset drink, made with beer, and give her a quart two or three mornings. It will assuredly cause it to spring and come down in abundance. *Proved.*

*To know if cattle be sound.*

Grip them on the back with your hand, behind the fore shoulder, and if not sound, they shrink back, and almost fall down, if sound, they will not shrink the least.

*Proved.*

*For the flux, cholick, or any such like thing.*

It will speedily give ease if you boil good store of sweet oil in the water it drinks. For the bloody-flux, give the beast some powder of

wood-rose seeds, dried and well bruised, brewed with a quart of ale, it will cure him.

*Proved.*

*For an old cough.*

A certain cure is, to steep two pounds of hysop in half a gallon of spring water, made thick with ground peas, or good wheat bran, or fine wheat and the roots of leeks, clean washed and beat well together, given the beast fasting. You may also bruise common garlick with dragon-water, new ale and butter, any quantity you think proper, and, being lukewarm, give it the beast, and repeat it as you see occasion.

*Proved.*

*For an inward disease in cattle.*

Take a handful of wormwood and as much rue, boil them in a quart of ale, let it be strained, add two spoonsful of the juice of garlick, as much houseleek, and as much London treacle. Make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and give it the beast.

*For a cow having newly calved, wanting milk.*

Anniseed boiled, and given in a warm mash, is very good for the increase of milk. Colewort leaves, boiled, or raw, will do the like. Barley and fennel-seed boiled, is very good.

*Proved.*

*For the overflowing of the gall in cattle.*

If the skin and eyes of your beast look yellow, it is a true sign of the overflowing of

the gall—the cure is, first let blood in the neck, about two quarts, afterwards for three mornings fasting, give this drench:—take a quart of new milk, a middling quantity of saffron and turmeric—mix them together, and give it to the beast. *Proved.*

*To help cattle that cannot piss.*

Take a good quantity of cardus, steep it in white-wine a whole night, then strain it, and give it to your beast. It will force urine, and increase appetite. *Proved.*

*For an ox or a cow that has taken venom.*

Your ox or cow will commonly gape and eat no meat, stand and hold their heads down, and mourn. If they have eaten any venomous grass, or such like, give them a middling large white onion to swallow, well bruised and mixed with vinegar—before you give it, be sure you rub their mouths and tongues well with it—you may add salt to the vinegar and onion. *Proved.*

*For a horse that is back-swankt, or for a strain in the kidneys, being over-burthened in the hinder part, or in race-running, or by being over-strained in the back.*

Take a fat hot sheep-skin, just as it comes from the back of the sheep, mix a little nerve-oil and a little turpentine well together, and besmear and anoint the inside of the sheep-skin all over, and clap it to the part of the

back that is sore, which commonly is the navel-place of the back-bone. In that part of the back-bone is a horse mostly swankt off. When you have thus laid it along his back-bone, make a crupper to go under his tail to keep it on, and a breast-plate before, and fasten them together, so girt them upon him for a month, till his back be knit and strengthened.

*Proved.*

*For a horse or a cow that maketh red water.*

Take a red-herring with a hard row, cut it as small as you can, and put it into a quart of strong beer, and give it the beast lukewarm. In twice giving it will cure.

*Proved.*

*For the yellow water in horses, &c.*

Take antimony, refined saltpetre, flower of brimstone, and cream of tartar, of each two ounces, (or for a greater quantity, a similar proportion) and give to a horse, &c., as much as will lay on a cent, with wet bran, three times a day. A horse must not do any work for some time after he is thoroughly cured.

N. B. Mix the antimony and flour of brimstone together before you add the saltpetre and cream of tartar.

This receipt has the preference to any other that has yet been offered to the public.

*An approved cure for the sweiny.*

Take rusty bacon; cut it small, and render the fat out, then add two tea-cupsfull of fine



salt, and three fresh eggs, to half a pint of lard; stir it well till it be cold, and with this salve anoint the affected part on the third, fifth, and seventh days after the new moon: it is a certain cure. *Proved.*

*Another for the same.*

If your beast has the sweiny, rise the first Friday in the new moon, and perform this cure speechless before sunrise: take a sharp knife and cut a small bit of skin from the affected part, so that it may bleed, and put the skin with the blood into a small blank paper, then with an auger bore a hole on the east side into an apple tree, put in the paper with some blood, and drive a pin upon it in three strokes: this you will find to be the most certain cure. *Proved.*

*An approved cure for a founder in the body.*

First bleed him at the wart of each pastern, then with his feed give him a piece of weasel skin the size of a shilling, and it will cure. *Proved.*

*A cure for hollow-horn in cattle.*

First bore the horns with a gimblet, and put into each horn a teaspoonful or more of fresh milk from the cow: you may put a teaspoonful of spirits of turpentine upon the top of their head occasionally, which will prevent disease of the like nature. *Proved.*

*For a cow that hath lost her milk.*

If your cow hath lost her milk, which happeneth sometimes by some strange disease, take a handful of maiden-hair, boil it in a quart of spring water, and give the cow the decoction in a mash of bran and malt, and it is an immediate remedy. *Proved.*

# TABLE

## OF

### DRUGS AND HERBS,

AND WHERE THEY MAY BE HAD.

---

#### A

*Aristolochia longa*, birthwort or hartwort, at the apothecaries; *small nake-root*, nearly the same quality; *amcos*, (ammey) or bishopsweed, in gardens; *angelica root*, (angelica) or seed of the same nature; *arsesmart*, (flechraut) common, that which bites the tongue is the best; *auripigmentum*, at the apothecaries; *arcens*, (benedichten) a common herb in the woods, grows like *agrimony*, but smaller; *asphodellus*, (goldwurtzel) see daffodills, in gardens; *aqua vitae*, whiskey or brandy will do; *anniseeds*, (annisame) common; *agnus castus*, or the chaste tree, at the apothecaries; *agrimony*, (odermeinig) in the woods; *ash*, *black*, (schwarzen aschenbaum) common, by runs and creeks; *aloes*, at the apothecaries; *armoniuc*, at ditto; *agaric*, at ditto; *arsenick*, at ditto; *allum*, at stores; *almonds*, (mandeln) at ditto; *adder's tongue*, (natter zuenglein.)

#### B

*Betony*, (betomen) in the woods or gardens; *broom*, (pfrie men) in ditto; *bearsfoot*, (schwarze niesswarzel) or *black hellebore*, common; *betony-water*, (beten wasser) in flat, low ground; *bay-tree*, at the apothecaries; *brooklime*, (bachbungen) in runs, water cresses has the same effect; *beets*, (mangold oder kunkelrueben) in gardens; *beets*, *red*, (roterieben) in ditto; *barm*, from beer; *benjamin*, at the apothecaries; *brimstone*, at stores; *bdellium*,

at the apothecaries; *baxtree*, (bux baum) in gardens; *brandy-wine*, or *spirits of wine*, at the apothecaries; *bole-armoniac*, at ditto.

## C

*Calamint* (balsam) or *mountain-mint*, common; *cumin-seed*, (kimmel) at the apothecaries, fennel-seed may do; *carthamus*, called by the common people in America saffron; *colewort*, (kraut kohl) in gardens; *water cresses*, (brunenkresse) at springs; *cresses*, (loeffelkraut) in gardens, called spoonwort or scurvy-grass; *cellendine*, (schellkraut) in gardens; *coloquintida*, at the apothecaries; *castorium*, at ditto; *cuntharides*, or *spanish-flies*, at the apothecaries; *ceruse*, white or red-lead, at ditto; *cassia*, at ditto; *crocus-martis*, at ditto; *cinnamon*, at stores; *copperas*, at stores, the white at the apothecaries; *cardus-benedictus*, (cardobenedicten) in gardens; *caroline*, at the apothecaries; *chick-weed*, (kinkle kraut) common, in gardens; *chick-weed, red*, (rother huenerdarm) *columbine*, in gardens; *clary*, (zellerich) common, in gardens; *comfry*, (schwarz wurzel) common, in gardens; *centaury*, (tausengewelden kraut) common; *coriander-seeds*, at the apothecaries; *carraway seeds*, at ditto; *cardamus*, (weisen kresse) common, in gardens; *camomile*, (camillen) common, *cudwort*, (ruhr kraut) common, the running club-moss will answer; *clownswound-wort*, and *clownswort*, common.

## D

*Dill*, (dill) in gardens; *ditany*, (diptam) see calimint, common; *diaphera*, at the apothecaries; *dialthea*, at ditto; *dock, red*, (halbergoul kraut) see red dock, burdock, common; *diascordium*, at the apothecaries.

## E

*Euphorbium*, at the apothecaries—be careful of giving much inwardly, it is excellent for any wound; *enula campana*, (alandwurzel) see *elecampune*, in gardens; *elm-tree*, (ruschen baum) common.

## F

*Fænugreek*, in apothecaries' gardens ; *figs*, at stores ; *furmotory*, (ein englischer weitzen und milch brey) common ; *foles-foot*, (hassel wurzel or huflattig) see *colts-foot*, common, in low ground, with a round leaf the shape of a colt's foot ; *fennel*, (suese fenchel) in gardens, and wild ; *frankincense*, at the apothecaries ; *fringe-tree*, it grows by running water, and bears strings of white flowers in the spring, to be found in swamps, or at the apothecaries.

## G

*Garlic*, (gnoblich) in gardens and wild ; *groundsel*, *sertion*, (buttir kraut) or *butter-weed*, they grow in new cleared land, and by the sides of roads ; *guaiacum*, *linnum-vitæ*, at the apothecaries ; *gentian*, at ditto, two kinds ; *galbanum*, at ditto ; *gerologundium*, at ditto ; *gum dragon*, at ditto ; *galls of aleppo*, at ditto, see oak galls ; *Ginger*, (impfer) at stores.

## H

*Horseholm*, (eibisch) see holly-tree ; *hearts-tongue*, (hirschzungenkraut) found on rocks and north-side of hills, has a leaf like a dog's tongue, and a small burr on the top of the stalk ; *hog-fennel*, (schweinen kimmel oder scie berzel genau) see wild or garden loveage ; *hoarhound*, (andarn) in gardens ; *hemlock*, (gefleckter schierling) common ; *houseleek*, (hauswarzel) in gardens ; *hig-taper*, (woll kraut) common, see mullin ; *hysop*, (ysop) in gardens ; *horse-mint*, (balsam) wild mint ; *hartshorn*, deer horn, at the apothecaries ; *honey*, (honig) common ; *heild*, the grounds of beer ; *hempsced*, (hauf same) common ; *hellebore*, *black*, at the apothecaries.

## I

*Ivy*, *wall*, see ivy-berries ; *ivy*, *ground*, (erdepfau gunderman oder gundelreben) common ; *ivory*, *white*, at the apothecaries.

## J

*Juniper*, (wach holder) at the apothecaries.



## L

*Liver-wort*, (leber kraut) two sorts, common; *lignum vitæ guaiacum*, at the apothecaries; *long-pepper*, (rother pfeffer) see red pepper; *lavender-cotten*, (lavander) in gardens; *lillies, white*, (weissen lillyen) in ditto; *lapis calimnaris*, at the apothecaries; *lime*, (kalk) common; *leeks*, (gemeiner lauch) common, in gardens, and wild; *liquorice-ball*, or *stick*, (suessholz wurzel) at the apothecaries.

## M

*Motherwort*, (mutter kraut) common, in gardens; *mugwort*, (beyfuss) common; *maiden-hair*, (frauen harr wieder bringen oder wiedercunnn genand) an herb common in the woods, found on rocks, grows with a thin stalk, has one row of leaves on one side; *mechoacan*, at the apothecaries; *melilot*, (steinklee oder melldde) an herb commonly called lambs-quarter; *mercury, herb*, nearly of the nature of dock, at the apothecaries; *mistletoe*, at ditto; *mustard*, (senfkorn) in gardens, and wild; *hedge mustard*, (hederich) or bank cresses; *mallows*, (pappeln kae-spappeln) white and marsh, common, in gardens, and wild; *marsh mallows*, (eibisch) by running water; *moss*, (moes oder moss) many kinds, common; *mastick*, a gum, at the apothecaries; *myrrh*, at ditto, or in botanist's gardens.

## N

*Nep*, (kautzen kraut) see catmin, good for many uses; *nettles*, (brennesseln) common; *nettles, dead blind*, (taube nesseln;) *nutmegs*, at stores; *nut-oil*, at the apothecaries.

## O

*Origanum*, at the apothecaries, an oil; *origanum*, or wild majorum, (wurst kraut) an herb common in the country; *osmond royal*, (baumfahren oder farnkraut) or water-fern, common in low ground and swamps; *oil of speck*, at the curriers, made of the shavings of leather, or at the apothecaries; *oxycroceum*, at the apothecaries; *onions*, common; *ox-eye*, at ditto; *olibanum*, at the apothecaries.

## P

*Pellitory*, at the apothecaries, a plant not yet discovered here, fume with brimstone in place of it ; *polypodium*, (johannes wurzel) an herb, common, the true sort grows on rocks ; *populeon*, (babler wurzel) see poplar root, common ; *pennyroyal*, (poley oder gratte balsam) common ; *parsley*, (petersilien) in gardens, common ; *plantain*, (hausc kraut oder sayorenbletter kraut) many sorts, common, the white and broad mostly used for medicines ; *poke*, common ; *paradice-grains*, at the apothecaries ; *patch-grease*, piece-grease, or pitch-grease, made of shoemakers ends ; *pitch*, white or black, common, burgundy-pitch at the apothecaries ; *pepper*, round or black, at stores ; *precipitate*, at the apothecaries ; *poppies*, (mach) in gardens, and wild.

## Q

*Quicksilver*, (queck silber) at the apothecaries.

## R

*Rue*, (rauten) in gardens, and wild ; *rosemary*, (rosmarin) at the apothecaries, or in gardens ; *rosin*, at stores ; *radishes*, (roetich) see horse-radish.

## S

*Staves-acre*, not yet discovered here, at the apothecaries, spurge is of the same quality ; *surewort*, see honeysuckle, common in gardens, a vine that bears a red flower and smells very fragrant ; *shearman's-flocks*, what comes off the dressings of cloth at the fullers ; *sowthistle*, (tuistlen) common in fields ; *shepherd's-purse*, (tischel kraut) common in gardens, and wild ; *spurge*, (laus kraut) common in gardens, and wild, see staves-acre ; *silaris*, (liebstockel) mountain, see wild or garden loveage, common ; *solomon's seal*, (mutterkraut) see polygnum, common in gardens ; *sertion*, (grund sal) see groundsel or butter-weed, common, they grow in low ground or meadows, with a small yellow flower to be found in the month of May ; *sparagus*, (spargel) common, in gardens ; *sage*, (salbey) common, in gardens ;

*savin*, (sadebaum oder sevenbaum) in gardens, and wild, a shrub resembling the cedar ; *sallow*, (weide baum) see white willow, common ; *stitchwort*, at the apothecaries ; *snap-weed*, (wasser spring blumen) or the women's dye-weed, common in runs and wet ditches, commonly called touch-me-not ; *southernwood*, (alldermann) in gardens, commonly called old man ; *sanguinis draconis*, see dragons-blood, a gum at the apothecaries ; *sloes*, at ditto ; *soap*, common, casteel, or black, at the apothecaries ; *sugarcandy*, at ditto ; *sena*, an herb at ditto ; *sallad-oil*, or sweet-oil, at stores ; *salnitre*, see saltpetre, at the apothecaries ; *saffron*, (saffran) in gardens, the best at the apothecaries ; *storax*, at the apothecaries ; *snails*, (schnecken) common ; *sanicula*, (sanikel) see seneclé, white or black bears-foot, common in the woods—the black is nearly of a quality with black hellebore—the white is very good in salves, for wounds, grows with a high stalk, has burs on the top, and smells very fragrant ; *spuma-argenti*, at the apothecaries ; *spuma-nitre*, at the apothecaries ; *smallage*, (schmoel men) an herb common ; *sassafras*, (sassafras) common ; *snukeroot*, (kleinne schlangen wurzel) *snukeroot*, (hochen schlangen wurzel) tall, or rattleweed, in the woods.

## T

*Tansey*, (reinart oder sacnferich) in gardens, and wild, common ; *turmerick*, (kurkuma) common in roads or woods ; *tussiluginis*, at the apothecaries ; *tar*, (tarr) common, Barbadoes-tar at the apothecaries ; *turpentine*, (peintharz) common ; *turpentine*, oil or spirits, at the apothecaries ; *trotters-oil*, (kloenpfelt) the oil of sheep's feet ; *tobacco*, common ; *train-oil*, (fisch tron oder oel) common ; *treacle-jean*, (melassich) at the apothecaries.

## V

*Violets*, (veilwurzel oder viole) in gardens, and wild ; *vinegar*, (éssick) common ; *vitriol*, at the apothecaries ; *verjuice*, (holz aepfel seider) the juice of wild crab-apples.

## W

*Wine-spirits*, at the apothecaries; *wine-lees*, the settling of the cask; *woodroof*, (holse) common; *wood-roses*, (carden rosen) in gardens, a shrub or brier, common; *walnut-tree*, (walnuasz baum) common; *willow*, (rothen und weissen weide) a shrub, common, white and red, by runs and creeks; *woodbine*, commonly called sarsaparilla (sassaphrilla); *wax*, (bienen wacks) beeswax, common; *wormwood*, (wermuth) common in gardens.

## Y

*Yarrow*, (schaafrippen kraut) common in fields, resembles tansey, but smaller; *yewe*, (eibenbaum) common in swamps.

# INDEX.

	<i>Page.</i>
The first ordering of the running horse, according the several states of the body,	9
How to diet a horse for a match, that is fat, foul, &c., being the first fortnight,	11
Considerations concerning heats,	17
The second fortnight's keeping,	19
The first bread,	19
The first scowering,	25
The ordering of the horse after scowering,	"
The third fortnight's keeping,	28
The second bread,	"
The fourth and last fortnight's keeping,	29
The last bread,	"
General observations and instructions for buying a horse,	34
Of sickness in general,	45
Observations and directions in various accidents,	46
"    from the dung,	47
"    from the urine,	"
"    in feeding,	48
"    in case of lameness,	"
"    from the state of the body,	49
"    from the private parts,	50
"    from the limbs,	"
"    for watering,	51
"    in the choice of ground,	"
"    from sweating,	52
"    from the hair,	"
How to order, feed, and keep a horse, for pleasure, hunting, or travelling,	74
How to breed horses,	77
Directions, &c.	87, 140



# INDEX.

## A

Age of a horse, how to know to a certainty,	57
Anbury, a receipt for any	86
Anbury or tetter, receipt for any	248, 263
Attaint or nether attaint, hurt by over-reaching,	245
Apoplexy, falling-evil, staggers and phrenzy,	302
Ailments, colds, coughs, pursiness, heaving of the lungs, or inward sickness,	211, 227

## B

Botts, and all kinds of worms, an approved cure for	56, 72, 194, 234, 288, 289, 296, 308
Botts, worms, or a foul stomach, an excellent receipt for	279
Botch in the groin, &c. a cure for	278, 294
Bones broken, a cure for	249, 281
" out of joint, a receipt for	273
" out of joint, or broken,	"
Blood, for a beast that staleth, an approved cure for	72
" for a horse that pisses	95
" a receipt for the pissing of	234, "
" how to staunch it,	240
" for a horse that pisses	252
Bloody-flux, a receipt for	233, 251
Blood-spavin, a receipt for a	194, 247
" an excellent medicine for a	247
Blood-rifts, lamprass, camery, inflammation, tongue- burnt, or barbes, a receipt for	225, 241
Bleeding at the nose, how to stop	93, 123, 192, 294, 312
Blisters, an ointment for	296
Blindness, a cure for	260
" or dimness of sight, a cure for	261
Bite of a mad dog, or serpent,	127, 271, 272, 276
Brittle hoofs, a receipt for	118, 157
" " how to make grow quickly	117
Bruise, by any fume or stub, a receipt for	124
Bruise, or bite upon the cuds,	139
Burnt, for a horse burnt by a mare,	96

# INDEX.

Back-swankt, or strain,	153, 242, 322
Broken-wind, a receipt for	127, 161

## C

Canker,	91, 94, 132, 170, 240, 259, 271, 275, 295, 298
Cold, a receipt for	53, 61, 72, 124, 128, 149, 167, 193
“ “	194, 197, 198, 211, 227, 262, 263
Cold, or glanders, an approved medicine for	53, 61, 262
Curb, a receipt for	200
Colts, what time is best to wean	82
“ what feeding is best for them,	82
“ what age they may be handled at,	85
“ how to get horse-colts,	275
Covered, how to use a mare after being	70
“ the best time for mares to be	80
Covering, the order of	79
Cover, how long your horse will serve to	81
“ to diet a stallion the time he shall	”
Cough, receipts for	94, 127, 213, 285, 292, 310
Cholick, to cure the	113, 233
Costiveness, a receipt for	263, 276
Cords, or string-halt, a receipt for	178, 248
Consumption of the liver, a cure for	231, 254
Crick in the neck, a receipt for	241, 252
Crest-fallen, and manginess, a cure for	252
Cramp, a receipt for a	227
Crown-scab, a receipt for	266

## D

Decoction, what it is,	219
“ what quantity for a glister,	220
Dropsy, a receipt for	232, 294, 295
Drenches, for all inward diseases,	”
Diapente, how to make it,	180

## E

Evil, to cure the the sleeping-evil,	92, 226
“ to cure the falling-evil,	93, 226
“ to cure the hungry-evil,	230

# INDEX.

Eyes, an excellent water for the	62, 113
" for pearl, pin, &c. in the	69
" for a stroke or bite in the	72, 122
" for sore eyes,	89, 258
" blood-shot, moon-eyes, dim eyes,	238

## F

Farcy, a receipt for the	71, 264, 289
" in the head, a cure for	174
" in the legs, a cure for	175
" how to cure a water-farcy,	176
" how to cure a button-farcy,	177
Fever, how to cure a fever,	188
Flaps, a receipt for the	86
Farcion, a receipt for a	90, 97
" all over the horse, to cure	114, 171
" in the neck or head only,	115, 174
" a warter-farcion, a cure for	112
Founder in the feet, how to cure	68, 129, 151, 243
" in body, how to cure	105, 230, 276, 290, 324
" for a horse that is foundered,	100, 291
Fistula, receipt for the	108, 271, 282, 297, 298, 304
" or gangrene in the foot,	206
Fundament fallen out, how to cure,	99, 233
" of a horse fallen out, or mother of a cow fallen out, how to cure	91
Fig, a receipt for the fig,	258
Foot, for a stub in the foot or heel,	92
" an over-reach, or cut above the hair,	
Frenzy, or staggers, a receipt for	
Frush, to cure the running of the	257
Fevers in general, a receipt for	277

## G

Glanders,	53, 54, 69, 70, 203, 205, 206, 228, 306
Glisters, receipt for	216, 219, 221, 222, 223, 224, 237
Glisters, to expel wind,	73
" the quantity of drugs for a	220
Glisters-pipe, the length of a	"
Galls, a cure for	70, 253

# INDEX.

Galled, for a horse that is	267, 298
Gored, for a horse that is	270
Garget, a receipt for the	120, 130, 130
Gripping, a receipt for the	186
Gelding of horses, a receipt for	275

## H

Halting, a receipt to cure	243
Hair, how to make sleek and soft	276
Handle, how to handle a horse,	83
Horse, how to use after handling	84
Hair, how to make grow quick	293
Haw, a cure for a	299
Heel, for a horse that treads on the	72
Heels, kiked, a receipt for	254
Heat, for a sudden heat,	149
" in the mouth, a cure for	253
Head-ache, a receipt for a	225, 253
Hurl-bone, how to cure the	144
Humours, how to dissolve	271
" how to drive back,	254
Hide-bound, a receipt for	228, 283
Hoofs, a receipt for	69, 71, 117, 118, 273
" of the loosening of	246, 254
Horse-spice, how make	181
Honey, how to make the powder of	269

## I

Ives,	112
Imposthume, a receipt for an	239, 298
Inflammation, or swelling, a receipt for	139
" of the liver, a receipt for	231
Interfering, how to help or hide	70, 245
Itch, or mange, a cure for	242
" mad-itch, a receipt for	252, 298

## K

Kernels under the throat, how to cure	126, 134
Knees, broken or swelled, how to cure	136
Knot, a receipt for a moving fleshy,	119

# INDEX.

## L

Laxativeness, or looseness, how to cure	60
Lax, or much scowering, how to cure	233, 277
Lax, or bloody-flux, a receipt for	233
Legs, swelled or goured, how to cure	257
"    swift-cut on the legs, how to cure	67
"    an Indian cure for sore	297
Lice, of horses or cows, how to kill	92, 116, 123
Looseness in a horse's body, how to stop	148, 222
Lye black-ash, how to make	279

## M

Mange, scab, or leprosy, how to cure	68
"    for a horse troubled with the	73, 190, 241, 267
"    in horse or cow, to cure the	133
Mares, wild mares not best for the race,	77
"    what age best to be handled and covered,	78
"    to enforce to come to the stand,	78
"    to prevent from going barren,	79
"    the best time in the year to be covered,	80
"    that has cast her foal, to cure	275
"    of the rage of love in	274
"    of the barrenness of their womb,	
"    of the particular diseases of	235, 281
"    how to use after foaling,	81
"    how long a horse will cover	181
"    the best age to bear colts,	81
"    what food is best in winter fo	84
Mallender, how to cure	114, 148, 244
Medicines, how to keep	140
Molten, for a horse that is	118
Mourning of the chine, a cure for the	228, 283
Mules, a receipt to cure the	96

## N

Navel-gall, receipts for the	95, 117, 134
Neesings, or frictions, a cure for	237
Nether-joints, or strain, a cure for	257
Neigh, to keep a horse that he cannot	278



# INDEX.

## O

Ointment, receipts for	89, 96, 98, 296
Oil, of red-cedar, how to make	278
" of oats, how to make	314

## P

Pains, receipts for any	70, 229, 240, 241, 242
Palsey, a receipt for the	114
Pestilence, a receipt for a	104, 109
Piss, how to make a horse	106, 124, 164
Poll-evil, a receipt for a	107, 146, 291, 304
Poisoned, for a horse or cow that is	109, 277
Purge, a receipt for a	60, 211, 215, 217, 218
Pricked, a receipt for a horse that is	98, 155, 156

## Q

Quitterbone, a receipt for the	99, 201, 248
--------------------------------	--------------

## R

Rowel, the way to put in the	88
Rowelling, a receipt for	287
Ring-bone, receipts for a	120, 182, 289

## S

Salve, of soap and brandy, how made,	137
Salt, how to burn and prepare	259
Sickness, a receipt for a	225
Sinews, a receipt for the	255
Sinew-sprung, a receipt for	54
Sinew-strain, a receipt for a	63, 64, 117, 134
" "	135, 145, 257, 264, 267
Shoulder-strain, a receipt for a	63, 296
Spleen, a receipt for the	73, 232
Stifle, a receipt for a	144, 266
Strain, receipts for a	54, 63, 73, 136, 142, 144
" "	209, 212, 255, 256, 266, 296
Stone, receipts for the	61, 234, 251, 252, 295
Strangling, or distemper,	123, 125, 165, 195, 295
Strangullion, a receipt for the	185, 235
Stranguary, a receipt for	254
Star, how to make a	184, 294

# INDEX.

Staggers, a receipt for the	110, 166
Stumbling, a receipt for	180
String-halt, a receipt for a	272
Softness, how to harden any	273
Sore, a receipt for a	87, 106
Sore-back, a receipt for a	73 307
Sole-beated,	97
Scurvey, a receipt for the	133
Scowering, receipts for a	62, 116, 118, 119, 122, 277, 292
Scratches, receipts for the	66, 69, 71, 128, 129, 184, 269
Swelling, receipts for the	65, 69, 73, 95, 99, 105, 133, 136
"                  "	137, 174, 175, 268, 300, 317
Sickness in horses,	225
Spavin, receipts for a	183, 194, 247
Splint, receipts for a	67, 102, 102, 103, 147, 244, 269
Suppositories, receipts for	213, 214
"                  directions for	215
Sweeny,	237, 323, 324
Surfeit, receipts for a	158, 161, 229, 284, 290

## T

Tired horse, receipts for a	229, 293
Thorn, how to draw out a	86, 248
Tongue, a cure for a sore	255
Tetter, a receipt for	264
Tumours, a receipt for	298

## U

Ulcer, a receipt for an old	250, 268, 297
Unguentum basilicon, how to make	278

## V

Venom, a receipt for	236, 249, 322
Vein, how to cure a broken	251
Vives, how to cure the	164, 239, 273
Vomit, how to make a horse	199

## W

Water, for a horse or cow that makes red	110, 322
Wind-gall, receipts for the	64, 245, 256, 265

## INDEX.

Wind-broken, receipts for	261, 285
Wind-cholick, a receipt for the	
Wounds, receipts for	86, 87, 89, 90, 92, 96, 103
"          "	124, 154, 155, 247, 270, 301
Wound upon the coronet, to cure a	248, 291
Worms, a receipt to kill	187, 215
Wens, how to cure	293
Wheesings, a receipt for	162, 262

### Y

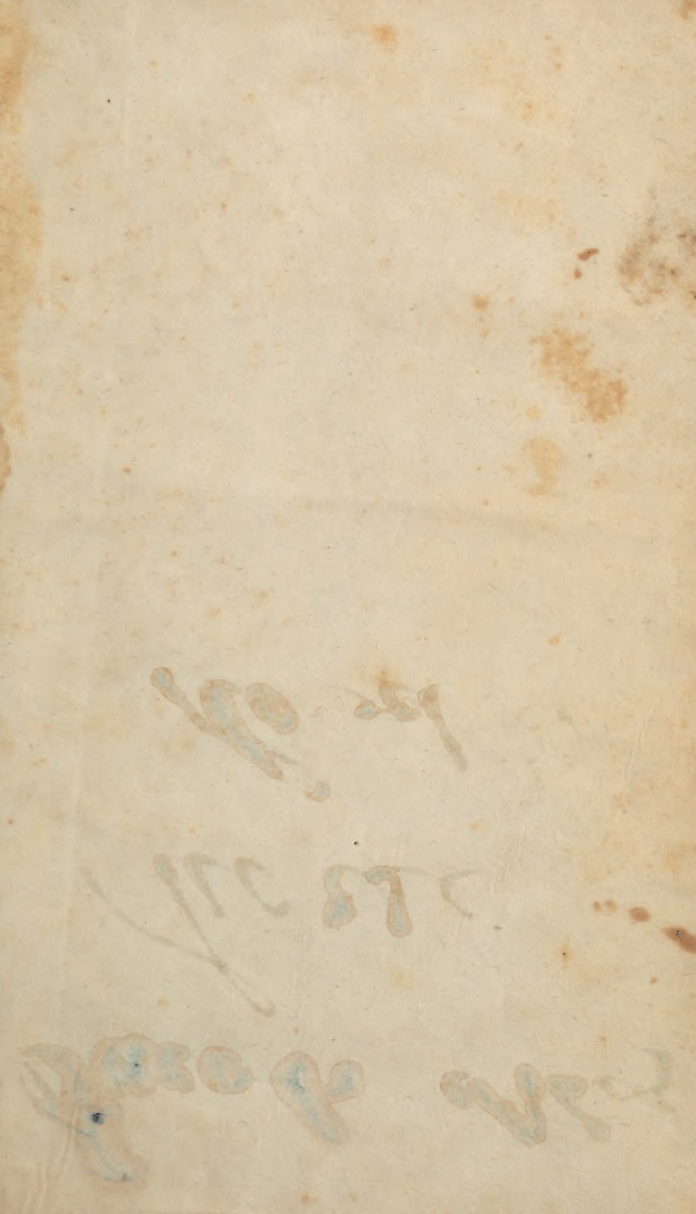
Yard, a receipt for diseases in the	157, 235
Yellows,	105, 231, 263
Yellow water,	223

---

## RECEIPTS FOR CATTLE.

Cow that has lost her milk,	325
Cattle, to know if they be sound,	320
Cows that cannot calve,	314
Cows that don't clean well, for	319
Cow, newly calved, wanting milk, for a	321
Cough, a receipt for an old	321
Cough in oxen, a receipt for the	316
Cud, for cattle that have lost their	317
Diseases in cattle, a receipt for the	316
Diseases in cattle, a receipt for the	321
Flux, or cholick, a receipt for the	320
Lice, a receipt to kill	122
Milk in kine, things good to breed	320
Observations concerning cattle,	121
Overflowing of the gall, a receipt for the	321
Piss, a receipt for cattle that cannot	322
Palate of the mouth down, a receipt for	318
Scowering, a receipt to stop	122
Swelled, for cattle that are	317
Worms in cattle a receipt for	319
Hollow-horn,	324







Jacob May

House

No. 10

WZ 290 M345c 1830

